

## 35 Elements

**<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from chunk, typed)

**part** specifies whether or not the block is complete.

*Datatype* (Y | N | I | M | F)

*Legal values are:*

- Y the block is incomplete
- N either the block is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness
- I the initial part of an incomplete block
- M a medial part of an incomplete block
- F the final part of an incomplete block

*Default* N

*Note* The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the block is to be reconstituted.

*Note* The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

*Module* Declared in file teiink2.dtd; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Class* chunk; typed

*Data Description* May contain anything which may appear within a paragraph.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue item metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic sp stage view

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT ab %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST ab
  %a.global;
  %a.typed;
  part (Y | N | I | M | F) "N">
```

*See further* 14.3 Blocks, Segments and Anchors

**<abbr>** (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data)

**expan** (expansion) gives an expansion of the abbreviation.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* The address is Southmoor <abbr expan="road">Rd</abbr>.

*Note* Only one expansion may be given for an abbreviation; if different expansions are to be proposed, the tags for critical apparatus should be used.

**resp** (responsibility) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for supplying the expansion of the abbreviation held as the value of the expan attribute.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Example* The address is Southmoor <abbr expan="Road" resp="1b">Rd</abbr>.

*Note* If no expansion is given, the resp attribute has no meaning.

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the expansion of the abbreviation.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**type** allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

suspension the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

contraction the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

superscription the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

acronym the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

title the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, ...)

organization the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

geographic the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <abbr type="acronym">RSVP</abbr>  
<abbr type="organization">SPQR</abbr>  
<abbr type="brevigraph"></abbr>  
<abbr type="contraction">yr hb1 servt</abbr>

*Note* The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use.

*Example*

<abbr expan="senatus populusque romanorum" resp="author" type="organization">SPQR</abbr>

*Note* This tag is the mirror image of the <expan> tag; both allow the encoder to transcribe both an abbreviation and its expansion. In <abbr>, however, the original is transcribed as the content of the element and the expansion as an attribute value; <expan> reverses this. The choice between the two is up to the user. The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate. For a typology of ME abbreviations, see A. G. Petty, *English literary hands from Chaucer to Dryden* (London: Edward Arnold, 1977), pp. 22–25.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
 byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
 damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
 docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
 foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
 item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
 num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
 placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
 resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker  
 sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr  
 trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT abbr %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST abbr
  %a.global;
  expan CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.5 *Abbreviations and Their Expansions*

**<activity>** (activity) contains a brief informal description of what a participant in a language interaction is doing other than speaking, if anything.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<activity>driving</activity>
```

*Note* For more fine-grained description of participant activities during a spoken text, the <event> element should be used.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date  
 dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss  
 handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef  
 oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span  
 spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* setting

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT activity %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST activity
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 23.2.3 *The Setting Description*

**<actor>** (actor) Name of an actor appearing within a cast list.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<castItem>
  <role>Mathias</role>
  <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>
  <actor>Mr. Henry Irving</actor>
</castItem>
```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Data Description* Contains phrase level elements and character data only.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date  
 dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss

handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef  
oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span  
spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xprr xref

*May occur within* castItem

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT actor %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST actor
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 10.1.4 *Cast Lists*

**<add>** (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**place** if the the addition is written into the copy text, indicates where the additional text is written.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**inline** addition is made in a space left in the witness by an earlier scribe  
**supralinear** addition is made above the line  
**infralinear** addition is made below the line  
**left** addition is made in left margin  
**right** addition is made in right margin  
**top** addition is made in top margin  
**bottom** addition is made in bottom margin  
**opposite** addition is made on opposite page  
**verso** addition is made on verso of sheet  
**mixed** addition is made somewhere, one or more of other values

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsible) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the hand of the addition.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the identification of the hand of the addition.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the addition.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Note* The <add> tag should not be used for additions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <supplied> tag should be used.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption  
castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure  
foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label

lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT add %om.RR; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST add
  %a.global;
  place CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;>
```

*See further* 6.5.3 *Additions, Deletions, and Omissions*

**<addName>** (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from personPart

#### Example

```
<persName>
  <foreName>Frederick</foreName>
  <addName type="epithet">the Great</addName>
  <roleName>Emperor of Prussia</roleName>
</persName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* personPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* persName

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT addName %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST addName
  %a.global;
  %a.personPart;>
```

*See further* 20.1 *Personal Names*

**<address>** contains a postal or other address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from data

#### Example

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
```

```

    <postCode>40126</postCode>
    <name>Bologna</name>
    <name n="I">Italy</name>
  </address>

```

```

<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>

```

*Note* Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of address component elements.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data

*Data Description* If given as running prose, use a consistent format wherever possible, for example separating lines of the address by commas, and including any postal code in the standard form.

*May contain* addSpan addrLine alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone name pb postBox postCode respons span spanGrp street timeline

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT address %om.RO; ( (%m.Incl;)*,
                               ( (addrLine, (%m.Incl;)*)+ | ((%m.addrPart;), (%m.Incl;)*)* )
) >
<!ATTLIST address
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 6.4.2 Addresses; 5.2.4 Publication, Distribution, etc.; 6.10.2.3 Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details

**<addrLine>** contains one line of a postal or other address.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>

```

*Note* Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of address component elements.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

May occur within address

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT addrLine %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST addrLine
    %a.global;>
```

See further 6.4.2 Addresses; 5.2.4 Publication, Distribution, etc.; 6.10.2.3 Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details

**<addSpan>** (added span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text added by an author, scribe, annotator or corrector (see also <add>).

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from editIncl)

**type** classifies the addition, using any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**place** indicates where the addition is made.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

*inline* addition is made in a space left in the witness by an earlier scribe.

*supralinear* addition is made above the line.

*infralinear* addition is made below the line.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*marginleft* addition is made in left margin.

*marginright* addition is made in right margin.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* Then they went back home.

```
<addSpan place="supralinear marginright overleaf" to="p23"/>
```

When they got there, ...

*Note* Long additions may frequently spill from one location to another; in this case, more than one value may be given, as shown in the example above.

**resp** (responsible) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the hand of the addition.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the identification of the hand of the addition.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the addition.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**to** indicates the endpoint of the added passage, by supplying the value of the id attribute of an <anchor> or other empty element placed there.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* any valid identifier.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* Both the beginning and the end of the added material must be marked; the beginning by the <addSpan> element itself, the end by the to attribute.

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr

*Class* editIncl

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT addSpan %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST addSpan
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  place CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;
  to IDREF #REQUIRED>
```

*See further* 18.1.4 Additions and Deletions

**<admin>** (administrative information) within a <termEntry> element, contains administrative information pertaining to data management and documentation of the entry.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from terminologyMisc)

**type** identifies the administrative event or information using some typology, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

- responsibility** The admin element identifies the agency or individual responsible for the data element or entry.
- created** The admin element describes the creation of the data element or entry.
- updated** The admin element describes the update or modification of the data element or entry.
- approved** The admin element describes the final approval of the data element or entry.
- domain** The element indicates the subject area to which a concept pertains.
- subdomain** The element indicates the subdomain of the subject area to which the concept pertains.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* A much fuller list of values for the type attribute may be generated from the dictionary of data element types under preparation as ISO TC 37/SC 3/WD 12 620, Computational Aids in Terminology. See ISO 12 620 for fuller details.

**date** indicates the date of the administrative event or information marked by the element.

*Datatype* %ISO-date;

*Values* a date in ISO standard form (yyyy-mm-dd).

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The date attribute should be used on the <admin> element to indicate the date of the administrative process (creation, update, approval, etc.) being recorded, rather than a separate <date> element linked to the <admin> element by a depend attribute.

**resp** (responsibility) indicates the agency or individual responsible for the entry or data element on which the <admin> element depends, or for the administrative procedure recorded by the <admin> element.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters (usually the acronym of the agency or the initials of an individual).

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Some terminological database systems treat responsibility as a cross reference to a personnel entry.

#### *Example*

```
<admin depend="te84.11" type="domain"
resp="ISO/TC 61, Plastics">plastics</admin>
<admin depend="te84.11" type="responsibility" resp="ISO/TC 61, Plastics"/>
<admin depend="te84.11" type="created" date="1991-10-23" resp="SEW"/>
<admin depend="te84.11" type="updated" date="1992-12-15" resp="MSM"/>
```

*Note* Administrative data takes widely varying forms in different terminological databases; the type attribute should be used to indicate the particular class of administrative information involved. For domain or other similar information, the <admin> element should be used to provide the domain information as the content of the element. In the case of responsibility information or information about maintenance of the entry, the <admin> element may have no content at all, its information all having been conveyed by the attributes type, date, and resp. The <admin> element should also be used to record dates of major changes to the term entry, if these are to be recorded.

*Module* Declared in file teite2n; Declared in file teite2f; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology

*Class* terminologyMisc

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ofig termEntry tig

#### *Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT admin %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST admin
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  date %ISO-date; #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 13.4.2 DTD Fragment for Flat Style; 13.4.1 DTD Fragment for Nested Style; 13.2 Tags for Terminological Data

**<affiliation>** (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from demographic

*Example*

```
<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US
  <name type="org">National Endowment for the Humanities</name>
</affiliation>
```

*Note* If included, the name of the organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or (when the additional tag set for names and dates is in use) the more specific <orgName> element.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT affiliation %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST affiliation
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<alt>** (alternation) identifies an alternation or a set of choices among elements or passages.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from complexVal, metadata, pointer)

**targets** specifies the identifiers of the alternative elements or passages.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* Each value specified must be the same as that specified as value for an id attribute for some other element in the current document.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**mode** states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.

*Datatype* (excl|incl)

*Legal values are:*

**excl** indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.

**incl** indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur.

*Default* %INHERITED;

**weights** If mode is **excl**, each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs. If mode="incl" each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs given that at least one of the other alternatives occurs.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a list of numbers, in the range from 0 to 1 if wScale is **real**, and in the range from 0 to 100 if wScale is **perc**.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If mode is **excl**, the sum of weights must be 1 (or 100%;). If mode is **incl**, the sum of weights must be in the range from 0 to the number of alternants (or 0 to 100%; times the number of alternants).

**wScale** indicates the scale used to express the value of the weights attribute value.

*Datatype* (perc|real)

*Legal values are:*

`perc` indicates that the weights are expressed as percentages.

`real` indicates that the weights are expressed as values between 0 and 1.

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Example*

```
<alt mode="excl" targType="u u" targets="we.fun we.sun" weights="50 50"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file `teiling2.dtd`; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by `TEI.linking`

*Class* `pointer`; `complexVal`; `metadata`

*Data Description* `empty`

*May occur within* `ab` `abbr` `activity` `actor` `add` `addName` `addrLine` `address` `admin` `affiliation` `altGrp` `analytic` `app` `argument` `author` `authority` `back` `bibl` `biblFull` `biblScope` `biblStruct` `birth` `bloc` `body` `byline` `camera` `caption` `case` `castGroup` `castItem` `castList` `cell` `channel` `cit` `cl` `classCode` `closer` `colloc` `constitution` `corr` `country` `creation` `damage` `date` `dateRange` `dateStruct` `dateline` `def` `del` `derivation` `descrip` `dictScrap` `distance` `distinct` `distributor` `div` `div0` `div1` `div2` `div3` `div4` `div5` `div6` `div7` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `domain` `edition` `editor` `education` `emph` `entry` `entryFree` `epigraph` `epilogue` `etym` `expan` `extent` `f` `factuality` `figDesc` `figure` `firstLang` `foreName` `foreign` `form` `front` `fs` `funder` `fw` `gen` `genName` `geogName` `gloss` `gram` `gramGrp` `graph` `group` `head` `headItem` `headLabel` `hi` `hyph` `imprimatur` `imprint` `interaction` `item` `itype` `l` `label` `lang` `langKnown` `language` `lbl` `lem` `lg` `lg1` `lg2` `lg3` `lg4` `lg5` `list` `listBibl` `locale` `m` `measure` `meeting` `mentioned` `metDecl` `monogr` `mood` `name` `nameLink` `note` `num` `number` `occasion` `occupation` `offset` `ofig` `opener` `orgDivn` `orgName` `orgTitle` `orgType` `orig` `orth` `otherForm` `p` `per` `performance` `persName` `phr` `placeName` `pos` `preparedness` `principal` `prologue` `pron` `pubPlace` `publicationStmnt` `publisher` `purpose` `q` `quote` `rdg` `rdgGrp` `re` `ref` `reg` `region` `rendition` `residence` `resp` `respStmnt` `restore` `role` `roleDesc` `roleName` `row` `rs` `s` `salute` `seg` `sense` `series` `set` `settlement` `sic` `signed` `soCalled` `socecStatus` `sound` `sp` `speaker` `sponsor` `stage` `street` `stress` `subc` `supplied` `surname` `syll` `symbol` `table` `tagUsage` `tech` `term` `termEntry` `text` `tig` `time` `timeRange` `timeStruct` `title` `titlePage` `titlePart` `tns` `tr` `trailer` `trans` `u` `unclear` `usg` `view` `w` `wit` `witDetail` `witList` `witness` `writing` `xr` `xref`

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT alt %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST alt
  %a.global;
  %a.pointer;
  targets IDREFS #REQUIRED
  mode (excl|incl) %INHERITED;
  weights CDATA #IMPLIED
  wScale (perc|real) %INHERITED;>
```

*See further* 14.8 *Alternation*

**<altGrp>** (alternation group) groups a collection of `<alt>` elements and possibly pointers.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata, `pointerGroup`)

**mode** states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.

*Datatype* (excl|incl)

*Legal values are:*

`excl` indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.

`incl` indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur.

*Default* `excl`

**wScale** indicates the scale used to express the value of the weights attribute value.

*Datatype* (perc|real)

*Legal values are:*

`perc` indicates that the weights are expressed as percentages.

`real` indicates that the weights are expressed as values between 0 and 1.

*Default* `perc`

*Example*

```

<altGrp mode="excl">
  <alt targType="seg seg" targets="dm lt bb" weights="50 25 25"/>
  <alt targType="l l" targets="r1 db" weights="50 50"/>
</altGrp>

<altGrp targType="seg l" mode="incl" wScale="perc">
  <alt targets="dm r1" weights="90 90"/>
  <alt targets="lt r1" weights="5 5"/>
  <alt targets="bb r1" weights="5 5"/>
  <alt targets="dm db" weights="10 10"/>
  <alt targets="lt db" weights="45 90"/>
  <alt targets="bb db" weights="45 90"/>
</altGrp>

```

*Module* Declared in file `teilink2.dtd`; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Class* pointerGroup; metadata

*Data Description* Any number of alternations, pointers or extended pointers.

*May contain* alt ptr xptr

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT altGrp %om.RR; ((alt | ptr | xptr)*)>
<!ATTLIST altGrp
  %a.global;
  %a.pointerGroup;
  mode (excl|incl) "excl"
  wScale (perc|real) "perc">

```

*See further* 14.8 *Alternation*

**<analytic>** (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from `biblPart`

*Note* The `<analytic>` element may occur only within bibliographic citation or reference elements; it is mandatory for description of the analytic level of `<biblStruct>` elements.

*Module* Declared in file `teicore2`; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*Data Description* May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor author cb certainty delSpan editor fLib fs fSlib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respStmnt respons span spanGrp timeline title

*May occur within* bibl biblStruct

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT analytic %om.R0; (author | editor | respStmnt

```

```

| title | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST analytic
  %a.global;>

```

See further 6.10.2.1 *Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels*

**<anchor>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

*Example*

```

<s>The anchor is he<anchor id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="A234"/></s>

```

*Note* On this element, the global id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

*Module* Declared in file *teiling2.dtd*; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by *TEI.linking*

*Class* *Incl*; typed

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT anchor %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST anchor
  %a.global;
  %a.typed;>

```

See further 11.3.2 *Synchronization and Overlap*; 14.4 *Correspondence and Alignment*

**<any>** (Any value) represents boolean *true* value variable.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from boolean

*Example*

```

<f name="gender">
  <any/>
</f>

```

*Module* Declared in file *teifs2*; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by *TEI.fs*

*Class* boolean

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT any %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST any
  %a.global;>

```

See further 16.8 *Boolean, Default and Uncertain Values*

**<app>** (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and at least one reading.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

- type** classifies the variation contained in this element according to some convenient typology.  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* Any convenient descriptive word or phrase, describing the extent of the variation (e.g. ‘word’, ‘phrase’, ‘punctuation’, etc.) its text-critical significance (e.g. ‘significant’, ‘accidental’, ‘unclear’), or the nature of the variation or the principles required to understand it (e.g. ‘lectio difficilior’, ‘usus auctoris’, etc.)  
*Default* #IMPLIED
- from** identifies the beginning of the lemma in the base text, if necessary.  
*Datatype* IDREF  
*Values* any valid identifier  
*Default* #IMPLIED  
*Note* This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used.
- to** identifies the endpoint of the lemma in the base text, if necessary.  
*Datatype* IDREF  
*Values* any valid identifier  
*Default* #IMPLIED  
*Note* This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used, with the encoded apparatus held in a separate file rather than being embedded *in-line* in the base-text file.
- loc** (location) indicates the location of the variation, when the location-referenced method of apparatus markup is used.  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* Any string containing a canonical reference for the passage to which the variation applies.  
*Default* #IMPLIED  
*Note* This attribute is used only when the location-referenced encoding method is used.

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain an optional lemma and one or more readings or reading groups.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb lem link linkGrp milestone pb rdg rdgGrp respons span spanGrp timeline wit

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT app %om.RO; ( (%m.Incl;)*, (lem, (%m.Incl;)*, (wit,
(%m.Incl;)*)? )?,
( (rdg, (%m.Incl;)*, (wit, (%m.Incl;)*)? )
| (rdgGrp, (%m.Incl;)*, (wit, (%m.Incl;)*)? ) )+)>
<!ATTLIST app
```

```

%a.global;
type CDATA #IMPLIED
from IDREF #IMPLIED
to IDREF #IMPLIED
loc CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

See further 19.1.1 *The Apparatus Entry*

**<arc>** encodes an arc, the connection from one node to another in a graph.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**label** gives a label for an arc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**label2** gives a second label for an arc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Use this attribute together with the label attribute if a transducer is being encoded.

**from** gives the identifier of the node which is adjacent from this arc.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of a node.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**to** gives the identifier of the node which is adjacent to this arc.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of a node.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```
<arc label="OLD" label2="VIEUX" from="t3" to="t3"/>
```

*Note* The <arc> element must be used if the arcs are labeled. Otherwise, arcs can be encoded using the adj, adjTo and adjFrom attributes on the <node> tags in the graph. Both <arc> tags and adjacency attributes can be used, but the resulting encoding would be highly redundant.

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* graph

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT arc %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST arc
  %a.global;
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  label2 CDATA #IMPLIED
  from IDREF #REQUIRED
  to IDREF #REQUIRED>

```

See further 21.1 *Graphs and Digraphs*

**<argument>** A formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divtop, fmchunk

*Example*

```

<argument>
<p>Monte Video &mdash; Maldonado &mdash; Excursion
to R Polanco &mdash; Lazo and Bolas &mdash; Partridges &mdash;
Absence of Trees &mdash; Deer &mdash; Capybara, or River Hog &mdash;
Tucutuco &mdash; Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits &mdash; Tyrant
Flycatcher &mdash; Mocking-bird &mdash; Carrion Hawks &mdash;
Tubes formed by Lightning &mdash; House struck</p> </argument>

```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divtop; fmchunk

*Data Description* Often contains either a list or a paragraph

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor bibl biblFull biblStruct camera caption castList cb certainty cit delSpan eTree entry entryFree event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note p pause pb q quote respons shift sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* back body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue front group lg opener performance prologue

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT argument %om.RR; ((%m.Incl;)*, (head?, %component.seq;))>
<!ATTLIST argument
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 7.2.4 Content of Textual Divisions; 7.2 Elements Common to All Divisions

**<att>** contains the name of an attribute appearing within running text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from sgmlKeywords)

**tei** indicates whether this attribute is part of the TEI scheme (i.e., defined in a TEI DTD fragment) or not.

*Datatype* (yes|no)

*Legal values are:*

yes this attribute is part of the TEI scheme.

no this attribute is not part of the TEI scheme.

*Default* yes

*Example*

The TEI defines three <soCalled>global</soCalled> attributes; their names are <att>id</att>, <att>rend</att> and <att>n</att>. <att tei="no">type</att> is not among them.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Class* sgmlKeywords

*Data Description* any valid name

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT att %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST att
    %a.global;
    tei (yes|no) "yes">
```

*See further* 27 Tag Set Documentation

**<attDef>** (attribute definition) contains the definition of a single attribute.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**usage** specifies the optionality of an attribute or element.

*Datatype* (req|mwa|rec|rwa|opt)

*Legal values are:*

req required

mwa mandatory when applicable

rec recommended

rwa recommended when applicable

opt optional

*Default* opt

### Example

```
<attDef usage="rec">
  <attName>type</attName>
  <desc>specifies a name conventionally used for this
  level of subdivision, e.g. <q>act</q>, <q>volume</q>,
  <q>book</q>, <q>section</q>, <q>canto</q>, etc.</desc>
  <datatype>CDATA</datatype>
  <valDesc>any string of characters</valDesc>
  <default>#IMPLIED</default>
</attDef>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*May contain* attName datatype default desc eg equiv remarks rs valDesc valList

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT attDef %om.R0; (attName, rs?, desc,
(datatype, (valList | valDesc)?),
default, eg?, remarks?, equiv*)>
<!ATTLIST attDef
  %a.global;
  usage (req|mwa|rec|rwa|opt) "opt">
```

*See further* 27.1.1 *The AttList Documentation Element*

**<att1Decl>** (attList declaration) contains the ATTLIST declaration associated with this element.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example* If the opening delimiter is seen by the parser, an error will result; it should therefore be represented by an entity reference, thus:

```
<att1Decl>
  &lt;!ATTLIST blort
            id      ID      #REQUIRED
            rend    CDATA   #IMPLIED  >
</att1Decl>
```

Alternatively, the entire element content may be enclosed in a CDATA marked section:

```
<att1Decl>
  <![CDATA[ <!ATTLIST blort
            id      ID      #REQUIRED
            rend    CDATA   #IMPLIED  >
  ]&nil;]>
</att1Decl>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* contains the full text of an ATTLIST declaration; to avoid parsing errors, the opening delimiter must be given as an entity reference, or else the entire content of the element should be enclosed in a CDATA marked section.

*May contain* #PCDATA

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT att1Decl %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST att1Decl
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*

**<attList>** contains documentation for all the attributes associated with this element, as a series of <attDef> elements.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

### Example

```
<attList>
  <attDef> <!-- ... --> </attDef>
  <attDef> <!-- ... --> </attDef>
</attList>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* contains a series of <attDef> elements only

*May contain* attDef

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT attList %om.R0; (attDef*)>
<!ATTLIST attList
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*; 27.2 *Element Classes*

**<attName>** (attribute name) contains the name of the attribute being defined by an <attDef> element.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<attName>type</attName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* any valid name.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT attName %om.R0; (#PCDATA) >
<!ATTLIST attName
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1.1 *The AttList Documentation Element*

**<author>** in a bibliographic reference, contains the name of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; the primary *statement of responsibility* for any bibliographic item.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

*Example*

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
```

```
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne,
    comtesse de (1634&ndash;1693)</author>
```

*Note* Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network which broadcasts the program.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*Data Description* Any string of characters and phrase-level tags.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* analytic bibl monogr titleStmt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT author %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST author
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.10.2.2 *Authors, Titles, and Editors*; 5.2.1 *The Title Statement*

**<authority>** (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

### Example

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

**Module** Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

**May occur within** publicationStmnt

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT authority %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST authority
  %a.global;>
```

See further 5.2.4 *Publication, Distribution, etc.*

**<availability>** supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes)

**status** supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

*Datatype* ( free | unknown | restricted )

*Legal values are:*

free the text is freely available.

unknown the status of the text is unknown.

restricted the text is not freely available.

*Default* unknown

### Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>

<availability status="free"><p>In the public domain</p></availability>

<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

**Module** Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Data Description** A consistent format should be adopted

**May contain** p

**May occur within** publicationStmnt

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT availability %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST availability
  %a.global;
  status ( free | unknown | restricted ) "unknown">
```

See further 5.2.4 *Publication, Distribution, etc.*

**<back>** (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from declaring

### Example

```
<back>
  <div1 type="appendix">
    <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
    <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature
    <!-- ... -->
```

```

    </p>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="epistle">
    <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires
      may be inserted</head>
    <salute>Sir.</salute>
    <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return
      it to the Vatican, if you please
      <!-- ... -->
    </p>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="advert">
    <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars
      of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr
      Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's
      Church-yard.</head>
    <list>
      <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
      <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
      <!-- ... -->
      <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected
        from the Writers of all Nations, 10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
    </list>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="advert">
    <head><hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi>
      Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in
      St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
    <list>
      <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the
        Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &amp;c. 2s. 6d</item>
      <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
      <!-- ... -->
    </list>
  </div1>
</back>

```

*Note* The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

*Module* Declared in file teiback2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declaring

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument byline castList cb certainty closer dateline delSpan div div1 divGen docAuthor docDate epigraph epilogue fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone opener pb performance prologue respons salute set signed span spanGrp timeline titlePage trailer

*May occur within* text

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT back %om.R0; ( (%m.front; | %m.Incl;)*,
  ( ( (%m.divtop;), (%m.divtop; | titlePage | %m.Incl;)* )
  | ( div, (div | %m.front; | %m.Incl;)* )
  | ( div1, (div1 | %m.front; | %m.Incl;)* ) )? ,
  (trailer | closer)* ) >
<!ATTLIST back
  %a.global;
  %a.declaring;>

```

*See further* 7.6 Back Matter; 7 Default Text Structure

**<baseWsd>** (base writing system declaration) identifies a writing system declaration whose mappings among characters, forms, entity names, and bit patterns are to be incorporated (possibly with modifications) in this writing system declaration.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from baseStandard

*Note* Reference in a WSD to a base WSD makes available the set of mappings among characters, forms, entity names, and bit patterns declared in the base WSD; the language and writing system (direction) information given in the base WSD is ignored.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Class* baseStandard

*Data Description* Empty.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT baseWsd %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST baseWsd
  %a.global;
  %a.baseStandard;>
```

*See further* 25.4.1 *Base Components of the WSD*

**<bibl>** (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from bibl, declarable

*Example*

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in
English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
```

```
<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>.
  In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date value="1968">1968</date>.
</bibl>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* bibl; declarable

*Data Description* Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp analytic anchor app author biblScope c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct edition editor emph expan extent fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi idno imprint index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone monogr name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg respStmt respons restore rs s seg series sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body broadcast camera caption case castList cell cit colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem listBibl meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition scriptStmt seg set sic sound sourceDesc stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage taxonomy tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT bibl %om.RO; (#PCDATA | %m.phrase; |
  %m.biblPart; | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST bibl
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 6.10.1 *Elements of Bibliographic References*; 5.2.7 *The Source Description*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<biblFull>** contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from bibl, declarable

*Example*

```

<biblFull>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English:
      women writers from the middle ages to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>

```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* bibl; declarable

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan editionStmt extent fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone notesStmt pb publicationStmt respons seriesStmt sourceDesc span spanGrp timeline titleStmt

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body broadcast camera caption case castList cell cit colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem listBibl meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition scriptStmt seg set sic sound sourceDesc stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage taxonomy tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear use view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT biblFull %om.R0; ((%m.Incl;)*, (titleStmt, (%m.Incl;)*),
  (editionStmt, (%m.Incl;)*)?, (extent, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
  (publicationStmt, (%m.Incl;)*), (seriesStmt, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
  (notesStmt, (%m.Incl;)*)?, (sourceDesc, (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST biblFull
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>

```

See further 6.10.1 *Elements of Bibliographic References*; 5.2.7 *The Source Description*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<bib1Scope>** (scope of citation) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of pagenumbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from bib1Part)

**type** identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. “pages”, “volume”.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

volume the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

pages the element contains a page number or page range.

chapter the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

*Default* #IMPLIED

### Example

```
<biblScope>pp 12&#x2013;34</biblScope>
<biblScope type="vol">II</biblScope><biblScope type="pp">12</biblScope>
```

**Module** Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** biblPart

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

**May occur within** bibl imprint monogr series

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT biblScope %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST biblScope
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.10.2.3 *Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details*

**<biblStruct>** (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic subelements appear and in a specified order.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from bibl, declarable

### Example

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isabel</author>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in
      English: women writers from the middle ages
      to the present</title>
    <edition>first edition</edition>
    <imprint>
      <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
      <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
      <date>1990</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

**Module** Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** bibl; declarable

**May contain** addSpan alt altGrp analytic anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap idno index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone monogr note pb respons series span spanGrp timeline

**May occur within** ab add admin argument body broadcast camera caption case castList cell cit colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem listBibl meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition scriptStmt seg set sic sound sourceDesc stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage taxonomy tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT biblStruct %om.R0; ((%m.Incl;)*, (analytic, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
  ((monogr, (%m.Incl;)*), (series, (%m.Incl;)*)*)+,
  ((note, (%m.Incl;)* | (idno, (%m.Incl;)*))*)*>
<!ATTLIST biblStruct
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 6.10.1 *Elements of Bibliographic References*; 5.2.7 *The Source Description*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<bicond>** (bi-conditional feature-structure constraint) defines a biconditional feature-structure constraint; both consequent and antecedent are specified as feature structures or groups of feature structures; the constraint is satisfied if both *subsume* a given feature structure, or if both do not.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain two feature structures or feature-structure groups, separated by an empty <iff> element.

*May contain* f fAlt fs iff

*May occur within* fsConstraints

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT bicond %om.R0; ((fs | f | fAlt), iff, (fs | f | fAlt))>
<!ATTLIST bicond
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<birth>** (Birth details) contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from demographic)

**date** specifies the date of birth in an ISO standard form (yyyy-mm-dd).

*Datatype* %ISO-date;

*Values* a date in ISO standard form, generally ISO 8601:2000 5.2.1.1 Complete representation, extended format (yyyy-mm-dd).

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>
```

```
<birth date="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>,
early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date>
</birth>
```

*Note* Dates and place names, if included in the content of this element, should in general be tagged using the <date> and <name> elements respectively. If the additional tagset for Names and Dates is in use, the more specific elements defined by that tagset may be used as an alternative.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT birth %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST birth
    %a.global;
    date %ISO-date; #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<bloc>** (bloc) a geo-political unit containing one or more nation states.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from names, placePart, typed

*Example*

```
<bloc type="economic union">the European Union</bloc>
```

<bloc type="continent">Africa</bloc>

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* placePart; names; typed

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* placeName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT bloc %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST bloc
  %a.global;
  %a.names;
  %a.typed;>
```

*See further* 20.2 Place Names

**<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declaring

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div div0 div1 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* text

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT body %om.R0; ( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*,
  ( ( (%component;), (%m.Incl;)*)+,
    ((divGen, (%m.Incl;)*)*,
      ( (div, (div|divGen|%m.Incl;)* ) |
        (div0, (div0|divGen|%m.Incl;)* ) |
        (div1, (div1|divGen|%m.Incl;)* )
      )? ) )
  | ((divGen, (%m.Incl;)*)*,
    ((div, (div|divGen|%m.Incl;)* ) |
      (div0, (div0|divGen|%m.Incl;)* ) |
      (div1, (div1|divGen|%m.Incl;)* )
    ))), (%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)* )>
<!ATTLIST body
  %a.global;
  %a.declaring;>
```

*See further* 7 Default Text Structure; 13.4 Overall Structure of Terminological Documents

**<broadcast>** (broadcast) describes a broadcast used as the source of a spoken text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Example*

```
<broadcast>
  <bibl>
    <author>Radio Trent</author> <title>Gone Tomorrow</title>
    <respStmt><resp>Presenter</resp><name>Tim Maby</name></respStmt>
    <respStmt><resp>Producer</resp><name>Mary Kerr</name></respStmt>
    <date value="1989-06-12T12:30">12 June 89, 1230 pm</date>
```

```

    </bibl>
  </broadcast>

```

**Module** Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** declarable

**May contain** bibl biblFull biblStruct p recording

**May occur within** recording

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT broadcast %om.RR; (p+ | bibl | biblStruct | biblFull | recording)>
<!ATTLIST broadcast
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>

```

See further 5.2.9 Computer Files Composed of Transcribed Speech; 23.3.2 Declarable Elements

**<byline>** contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from divbot, divtop, fmchunk, tpParts

**Example**

```

<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made public before.</byline>

```

```

<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>

```

```

<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>

```

```

<dateline>Zagreb:</dateline>

```

```

<byline>de notre envoy&eacute; sp&eacute;cial.</byline>

```

```

<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Sometimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>

```

**Note** The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author.

Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

**Module** Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** divtop; divbot; tpParts; fmchunk

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct docAuthor emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

**May occur within** back body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue front group lg opener performance prologue titlePage

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT byline %om.R0; (#PCDATA | %m.phrase; | docAuthor | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST byline
  %a.global;>

```

See further 7.2.2 Openers and Closers; 7.4 Front Matter

**<c>** (character) represents a character.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from seg

**Example**

```

<c type="punctuation">?</c>

```

**Module** Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

*Class* seg

*Data Description* Character data. Should only contain a single character or an entity that represents a single character.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale m measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker  
sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr  
trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT c %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST c
  %a.global;
  %a.seg;>
```

*See further* 15.1 *Linguistic Segment Categories*

**<caesura>** marks the point at which a metrical line may be divided.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from phrase.verse

*Example*

```
<l>Hw&ae;t we Gar-Dena <caesura/> in gear-dagum</l>
<l>&t;eod-cyninga <caesura/> &t;rym gefrunon,</l>
<l>hy &d;a &ae;&t;elingas <caesura/> ellen fremedon.</l>
```

*Note* .

*Module* Declared in file teivers2.dtd; Base tag set for Verse: enabled by TEI.verse

*Class* phrase.verse

*Data Description* Empty element

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker  
sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr  
trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT caesura %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST caesura
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 9.3 *Components of the Verse Line*

**<camera>** describes a particular camera angle or viewpoint in a screen play.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from stageDirection)

**type** characterizes the camera angle in some respect, e.g. as a close-up, medium shot, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* any string of characters  
*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<view>George glances at the window--and freezes.
<camera>New angle--shock cut</camera>
Out the window the body of a dead man suddenly slams into
<hi>frame</hi><!-- ... -->
</view>
```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* stageDirection

*Data Description* Contains character data and phrase level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT camera %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST camera
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 10.3.1 *Technical Information*; 10.3 *Other Types of Performance Text*

**<caption>** contains the text of a caption or other text displayed as part of a film script or screenplay.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from stageDirection

*Example*

```
<camera>Zoom in to overlay showing some stock film of hansom cabs
galloping past</camera>
<caption>London, 1895.</caption>
<caption>The residence of Mr Oscar Wilde.</caption>
<sound>Suitably classy music starts.</sound>
<view>Mix through to Wilde's drawing room. A crowd of suitably
dressed folk are engaged in typically brilliant conversation,
laughing affectedly and drinking champagne.</view>
<sp who="tj">
  <speaker>Prince of Wales</speaker>
  <p>My congratulations, Wilde. Your latest play is a great success.
</p>
</sp>
```

*Note* A specialized form of stage direction.

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* stageDirection

*Data Description* Contains character data and phrase level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT caption %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST caption
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 10.3.1 *Technical Information*; 10.3 *Other Types of Performance Text*

**<case>** contains grammatical case information given by a dictionary for a given form.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, morphInfo

*Note* This element is synonymous with `<gram type=case>`.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; morphInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical values will be of the form 'nom', 'acc', 'dat', 'gen', etc.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT case %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST case
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<castGroup>** (Cast list grouping) groups one or more individual `<castItem>` elements within a cast list.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

**Example**

```
<castGroup rend="braced">
  <head>friends of Mathias</head>
  <castItem>
    <role>Walter</role>
    <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Hans</role>
    <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
  </castItem>
</castGroup>
```

*Note* Use the rend attribute to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, white space, font change, etc.

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor castGroup castItem cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib fw gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline trailer

*May occur within* castGroup castList

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT castGroup %om.RR; ((%m.Incl;)*, (head, (%m.Incl;)*))?,
```

```

((castItem | castGroup), (%m.Incl;)*),
(trailer, (%m.Incl;)*?)>
<!ATTLIST castGroup
  %a.global;>

```

See further 10.1.4 Cast Lists

**<castItem>** (Cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** characterizes the cast item.  
*Datatype* (role | list)  
*Legal values are:*  
 role the item describes a single role.  
 list the item describes a list of non-speaking roles.  
*Default* role

*Example*

```

<castItem>
  <role>Player</role>
  <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>

<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>

```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Data Description* Contains character data with phrase-level elements, <role>, <roleDesc>, and <actor>.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr actor add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore role roleDesc rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* castGroup castList

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT castItem %om.R0; (#PCDATA | role | roleDesc |
  actor | %m.phrase; | %m.Incl; )*>
<!ATTLIST castItem
  %a.global;
  type (role | list) "role">

```

See further 10.1.4 Cast Lists

**<castList>** (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.drama, dramafront, inter

*Example*

```

<castList>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Aafaa</role>
      <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Blindman</role>
      <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Goyi</role>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>

```

```

        <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
    </castItem>
</castItem>
    <role>Cripple</role>
    <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
</castItem>
</castGroup>
<castItem>
    <role>Si Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc>
    <actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor>
</castItem>
<castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
    <castItem>
        <role>Iya Agba</role>
        <actor>Nguba Agolia</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
        <role>Iya Mate</role>
        <actor>Bopo George</actor>
    </castItem>
</castGroup>
<castItem>
    <role>Dr Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
    <actor>Nat Okoro</actor>
</castItem>
<castItem>
    <role>Priest</role>
    <actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor>
</castItem>
<castItem>
    <role>The old man</role>
    <roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>
    <actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor>
</castItem>
</castList>
<stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of
Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>

```

**Module** Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

**Class** comp.drama; inter; dramafront

**May contain** ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castGroup castItem castList cb certainty cit dateline delSpan docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

**May occur within** ab add admin argument back body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form front gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT castList %om.RR; ((%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*,
                             (%component;), (%m.Incl;)*)*,
                             ((castItem | castGroup), (%m.Incl;)*)+,
                             (%component;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST castList
    %a.global;>

```

*See further* 10.1.4 Cast Lists; 10.1 Front and Back Matter

**<catDesc>** (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal **<textDesc>**.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>

<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"></constitution>
    <derivation type="original"></derivation>
    <domain type="art"></domain>
    <factuality type="fiction"></factuality>
    <interaction type="none"></interaction>
    <preparedness type="prepared"></preparedness>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"></purpose>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"></purpose>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add address app c caesura cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del distinct emph expan foreign formula fw geogName gloss handShift hi lang m measure mentioned name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar persName phr placeName ptr ref reg restore rs s seg sic soCalled space supplied term textDesc time timeRange timeStruct title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* category

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT catDesc %om.RO; (#PCDATA | %m.phrase; | textDesc )*>
<!ATTLIST catDesc
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.3.6 *The Classification Declaration*

**<category>** (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<category id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>

<category id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose
</catDesc>
  <category id="b11">
    <catDesc>reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* catDesc category

*May occur within* category taxonomy

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT category %om.RR; (catDesc, category*)>
<!ATTLIST category
  %a.global;>
```

See further 5.3.6 The Classification Declaration

**<catRef>** (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**target** identifies the categories concerned

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* One or more identifiers for <category> elements defined in the current document.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**scheme** identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* identifier of the associated <taxonomy> element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<catRef target="ba c1" scheme="s1"/>
```

*Note* The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May occur within* textClass

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT catRef %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST catRef
  %a.global;
  target IDREFS #REQUIRED
  scheme IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

See further 5.4.3 The Text Classification

**<cb>** (column break) marks the boundary between one column of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from refsys)

**ed** (edition) indicates the edition or version in which the column break is located at this point

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<cb n="123" ed="Riverside"/>
```

*Note* On this element, the global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. By convention, the <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* refsys

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor

docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym  
 expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss  
 gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang  
 langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr  
 mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType  
 orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace  
 publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role  
 roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker  
 sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange  
 timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT cb %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST cb
  %a.global;
  ed CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 6.9.3 Milestone Tags

**<cell>** contains one cell of a table.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**role** indicates the kind of information held in the cell.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

label labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values.

*Default* data

*Note* The value specified overrides any default specified by the role attribute of the parent <row> element, for this cell only.

**rows** indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows.

*Default* 1

*Note* Where several cells span several rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

**cols** indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several columns.

*Default* 1

*Note* Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it should be treated as a heading.

### Example

```
<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
    and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifig2; Additional tag set for figures, tables and formulae: enabled by TEI.figures

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

May occur within row

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT cell %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST cell
  %a.global;
  role CDATA "data"
  rows CDATA "1"
  cols CDATA "1">
```

See further 22.1.1 The TEI Table DTD

**<certainty>** indicates the degree of certainty or uncertainty associated with some aspect of the text markup.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata)

**target** points at the elements whose markup is uncertain.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* one or more valid identifiers, separated by white space.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example* Elizabeth went to <persName id="P1">Essex</persName>  
<certainty target="P1" locus="gi" degree="0.6"/>

*Note* If more than one identifier is given, the <certainty> element is interpreted as applying to all. If no identifier is present on the element being annotated, the attribute should give the identifier of a <ptr> element which points at the element being annotated; for further discussion of this indirect pointing mechanism, see chapter 14 *Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment*.

**locus** indicates the precise location of the uncertainty in the markup: applicability of the element, precise position of the start- or end-tag, value of a specific attribute, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**#gi** uncertain whether the element used actually applies to the passage.

**#startloc** start-tag may not be correctly located.

**#endloc** end-tag may not be correctly located.

**#location** both the start-tag and the end-tag may not be correctly located.

**name** the value given for the attribute name is uncertain.

**#transcribedContent** the content of the element may not be a correct transcription of the source text.

**#suppliedContent** the content of the element may not have been correctly supplied by the reader, e.g. as in the cases of corr and abbrev elements.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* The ‘#’ distinguishes the terms of the controlled vocabulary from possible collisions with attribute names. Extensions to this vocabulary should also use this prefix.

**assertedValue** provides an alternative value for the aspect of the markup in question—an alternative generic identifier, transcription, or attribute value, or the identifier of an <anchor> element (to indicate an alternative starting or ending location). If an assertedValue is given, the confidence level specified by degree applies to the alternative markup specified by assertedValue; if none is given, it applies to the markup in the text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* generic identifier, attribute value, location (e.g. indicated by a reference to an <anchor> element or to an <xptr> element), or other appropriate alternative value.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* Elizabeth went to <persName id="p1">Essex</persName>  
 <certainty target="p1" locus="#gi" assertedValue="p1ace"  
 degree="0.2"/>

*Note* This attribute makes it possible to indicate the degree of confidence in a specific alternative to some aspect of the markup. In the example above the encoder is expressing the likelihood (.2) that the generic identifier should be <p1ace> rather than <persName>, which is the coded element.

**desc** further describes the uncertainty in prose, perhaps indicating its nature, cause, or the justification for the degree of confidence asserted.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a prose description of how and why the markup is uncertain.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* Elizabeth went to  
 <persName id="p1">Essex</persName>  
 <certainty target="p1" locus="#gi" degree="0.2"  
 desc="Time of writing indicates the Earl rather than the town" />

*Note* In a given project, it may be possible to enumerate a finite list of recognized types and causes of uncertainty; in such cases, it will be useful to control the vocabulary used in this attribute, to aid later mechanical manipulation. It is not possible to suggest such a controlled vocabulary for general use.

**given** indicates conditions assumed in the assignment of a degree of confidence.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a characterization of the conditions which are assumed in the assignment of a degree of confidence. This may be in prose.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <!-- in the header, hand H1 is identified as that of MSM -->  
 <hand id="H1" scribe="MSM"/>  
 <!-- ... -->  
 <!-- in the text, the scribe has corrected 'Wessex' to 'Essex' -->  
 Elizabeth went to <corr id="C1" sic="Wessex" resp="MSM">Essex</corr>.  
 <!-- we are 60% certain that hand H1 is MSM,  
 and 90% certain that if H1 is MSM, then  
 it is MSM who corrected 'Wessex' into 'Essex'. -->  
 <certainty target="H1" locus="scribe" degree="0.6" id="P1"/>  
 <certainty target="C1" locus="resp" given="P1" degree="0.9"/>

*Note* A project may wish to control the vocabulary used in this attribute.

The envisioned typical value of this attribute would be the identifier of another <certainty> element or a list of such identifiers. It may thus be possible to construct probability networks by chaining <certainty> elements together. Such networks would ultimately be grounded in unconditional <certainty> elements (with no value for given). The semantics of this chaining would be understood in this way: if a <certainty> element is specified, via a reference, as the assumption, then it is not the attribution of uncertainty that is the assumption, but rather the assertion itself. For instance, in the example above, the first <certainty> element indicates that the confidence in the identification of the new scribe as 'msm'. The second indicates the degree of confidence that 'Essex' is a personal name, given that the new scribe is 'msm'. Note that the given in the second <certainty> element is not the assertion that the likelihood that msm is the new scribe is 0.6, but simply the assertion that msm is the new scribe; this is a recommended convention to facilitate building networks.

The ambitious encoder may wish to attempt complex networks or probability assertions, experimenting with references to other elements or prose assertions, and deploying feature structure connectives such as <alt>, <join>, and <not>. However, we do not believe that the <certainty> element gives, at this time, a comprehensive ambiguity-free system for indicating certainty.

**degree** indicates the degree of confidence assigned to the aspect of the markup named by the locus attribute.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Values of degree might be yes or no, the reals between 0 and 1, or traditional characterizations such as ‘doubtful’, ‘circa’, etc. Generally we recommend decimal numbers between 0 and 1, where larger numbers denote a greater degree of confidence in the assertions; 0 representing ‘certainly false’ and 1 representing ‘certainly true’.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* (For discussion of this example, see section 17.1.2 *Structured Indications of Uncertainty*)

```
Earnest went to <anchor id="a1"/> old
<persName id="p1">Saybrook</persName>.
<certainty id="c1" target="p1" locus="#gi" degree="0.6"/>
<certainty target="p1" locus="startloc" given="c1" degree="0.9"/>
<certainty id="c2" target="p1" locus="#gi"
  assertedValue="persName" degree="0.4"/>
<certainty target="p1" locus="startloc" given="c2" degree="0.5"/>
<certainty id="c3" target="p1" locus="startloc"
  assertedValue="a1" given="c1" degree="0.5"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicert2; Additional tag set for certainty: enabled by TEI.certainty

*Class* metadata

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT certainty %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST certainty
  %a.global;
  target IDREFS #REQUIRED
  locus CDATA #REQUIRED
  assertedValue CDATA #IMPLIED
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED
  given CDATA #IMPLIED
  degree CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 17.1.2 *Structured Indications of Uncertainty*

**<change>** summarizes a particular change or correction made to a particular version of an electronic text which is shared between several researchers.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<change n="P2.2">
  <date>21 Dec 91</date>
  <respStmnt><name>LB</name><resp>ed.</resp></respStmnt>
  <item>Added examples to section 3</item>
```

```

</change>
<change>
  <date>11 Nov 91</date>
  <respStmt><name>LB</name><resp>ed.</resp></respStmt>
  <respStmt><name>SB</name><resp>ed.</resp></respStmt>
  <item>Deleted chapter 10</item>
</change>

```

*Note* Changes should be recorded in a consistent order, for example with the most recent first.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* date item respStmt

*May occur within* revisionDesc

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT change %om.R0; (date, respStmt+, item)>
<!ATTLIST change
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 5.5 *The Revision Description*

**<channel>** (primary channel) describes the medium or channel by which a text is delivered or experienced. For a written text, this might be print, manuscript, e-mail, etc.; for a spoken one, radio, telephone, face-to-face, etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**mode** specifies the mode of this channel with respect to speech and writing.

*Datatype* (s | w | ws | sw | m | x)

*Legal values are:*

s	spoken
w	written
sw	spoken to be written (e.g. dictation)
ws	written to be spoken (e.g. a script)
m	mixed modes
x	unknown or inapplicable

*Default* x

*Example*

```
<channel mode="s">face-to-face conversation</channel>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* textDesc

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT channel %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST channel
  %a.global;
  mode (s | w | ws | sw | m | x) "x">

```

*See further* 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<character>** defines one unit in a writing system, supplementing or overriding information provided in the base coded character sets, writing system declarations, and entity sets.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**class** describes the function of the character using a prescribed classification.

*Datatype* (lexical | punc | lexpunc | digit | space | DL | LD | dia | joiner | other)

*Legal values are:*

- `lexical` character is used in writing words (lexical items) of the language (includes members of syllabaries and ideographic systems, as well as composite letter-plus-diacritic combinations)
- `punc` character is a punctuation mark which does not appear within lexical items
- `lexpunc` character can appear as a normal punctuation mark, but can also appear within a lexical item (and should usually, when occurring between two lexical characters, be treated as lexical—in English, hyphen and apostrophe are typically treated as members of this class)
- `digit` character is an Arabic decimal numeral (0, 1, ... 9) (does not include superscript numbers, circled numbers, numeric dingbats, etc.)
- `space` character represents some form of white space (space character, horizontal or vertical tab, newline, etc.)
- `d1` character is a diacritic applying to the following lexical character
- `1d` character is a diacritic applying to the preceding lexical character
- `dia` character is a diacritic which is explicitly joined to a lexical character by a joiner character
- `joiner` character is used to join a diacritic to the lexical character to which it applies (in some encoding schemes, the backspace control character may be used as a joiner; in others, a graphic character is used for the same function)
- `other` character does not fall into any of the other classes (dingbats and other unusual characters fall here)

*Default lexical*

*Note* The classification of characters provided by this attribute serves both informative and normative purposes: it helps identify the character being described, and the classification is used to define the meaning of the special character-class codes in the TEI extended pointer syntax described in chapter 14 *Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment*.

*Note* The notion of ‘characters’ as units in a writing system is widely spread, but not consistently defined; the `<character>` element should be used to identify whatever units the encoder wishes to distinguish as the meaningfully distinct graphic units of the writing system. In most cases, these will correspond to the units of coded character sets, but that this is not a requirement: a-umlaut, for example, may be treated as one character or two, depending on the user’s preference, regardless of how the coded character set in use treats it. In most cases, also, the units distinguished by the `<character>` element will be the ‘graphemic’ units of the writing system in question; however, since experts disagree on whether items like umlaut (let alone a given set of Chinese characters with regional variations in China, Korea, and Japan) are best treated as distinct graphemes or not, the association of `<character>` elements with the graphemes of a writing system provides at most a heuristic device for making reasonable decisions, rather than a definitive unambiguous test. Different forms of the same ‘character’ may be distinguished for whatever reason, as in the three-R example of chapter 4 *Languages and Character Sets*. In this case the different letter forms are distinguished by documenting them in different `<form>` elements; the fact that the different letter shapes do not make a lexical difference in the text may be expressed by grouping all three letter forms under the same `<character>` element. (Alternatively, the three forms may be treated as three distinct characters, for convenience or for whatever reason, by defining a distinct `<character>` element for each.)

*Module* Declared in file `teiwsd2`; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain one or more description elements (optional), a series of one or more `<form>` elements identifying different forms of the character, and an optional series of notes.

*May contain* desc form note

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT character %om.R0; (desc*, form+, note*)>
<!ATTLIST character
    %a.global;
    class (lexical | punc | lexpunc | digit | space | DL | LD | dia | joiner | other)
    "lexical">

```

See further 25.4.2 *Exceptions in the WSD*

**<characters>** contains a specification of the characters used in a particular writing system to write a particular language, and of how those characters are represented in electronic form.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<writingSystemDeclaration date='1993-06-01'
    name='-//TEI P2: 1993//WSD ISO 8859-1//en'>
  <language iso639=''>various</language>
  <direction chars="LR" lines="TB"/>
  <characters>
    <codedCharSet name="ISO 8859-1: 1992" authority="ISO"/>
    <exceptions>
      <!-- ... -->
    </exceptions>
  </characters>
</writingSystemDeclaration>

```

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain a series of base components (coded character sets, writing system declarations, and entity sets) followed by a set of exceptions to define differences from the base components.

*May contain* baseWsd codedCharSet entitySet exceptions

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT characters %om.R0; ( codedCharSet*, baseWsd*,
    entitySet*, exceptions? ) >
<!ATTLIST characters
    %a.global;>

```

See further 25.4.1 *Base Components of the WSD*; 25.1 *Overall Structure of Writing System Declaration*

**<children>** lists the elements which this element may directly contain.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<children>emph, hi, name, address, #PCDATA</children>

```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* the list may contain a description or a list of names separated by commas or spaces.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT children %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST children
    %a.global;>

```

See further 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*

**<cit>** A quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from hqinter

*Example*

```

<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently
  attended with such an insupportable smell, as to
  bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>

```

**Module** Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** hqinter

**Data Description** Must contain a single quote and a single bibliographic reference in either order

**May contain** addSpan alt altGrp anchor bibl biblFull biblStruct cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb ptr q quote ref respons span spanGrp timeline xptra xref

**May occur within** ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition eg emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT cit %om.RR; ( (q | quote | %m.bibl; | %m.loc; | %m.Incl; )+)>
<!ATTLIST cit
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.3.3 Quotation; 7.3 Groups of Texts; 12.3.5.1 Examples

**<c1>** (clause) represents a grammatical clause.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from seg

**Example**

```
<c1 type="relative" function="clause modifier">Which frightened
both the heroes so,<c1>They quite forgot their quarrel.</c1></c1>
```

**Module** Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

**Class** seg

**Data Description** May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

**May occur within** ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT c1 %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST c1
    %a.global;
    %a.seg;>
```

*See further* 15.1 Linguistic Segment Categories

**<class>** specifies the name of an element class.

**Attributes** Global attributes only

**Example**

```
<classDoc>
  <class>phrase</class>
  <!-- ... -->
</classDoc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* In TEI compatible encoding systems, the class name should be chosen so that a valid entity name may be made from it. For attribute classes, this name is made by prefixing the class name with the string ‘a.’; for model classes, the string ‘m.’ is used.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT class %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST class
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.2 *Element Classes*

**<classCode>** (classCode) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**scheme** identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must identify a <taxonomy> element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<classCode scheme="DDC12">410</classCode>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* textClass

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT classCode %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST classCode
    %a.global;
    scheme IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 5.4.3 *The Text Classification*

**<classDecl>** (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* taxonomy

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT classDecl %om.RR; (taxonomy+)>
<!ATTLIST classDecl
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.3.6 *The Classification Declaration*; 5.3 *The Encoding Description*

**<classDoc>** contains reference information for a TEI *element class*; that is a group of elements which appear together in content models, or which share some common attribute, or both.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** indicates whether this is a model class, an attribute class, or both.

*Datatype* (model | atts | both)

*Legal values are:*

**model** members of this class appear in the same content models

**atts** members of this class share common attributes

**both** members of this class share attributes and also appear in the same content models

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<classDoc type="model" id="SEG">
  <class>seg</class>
  <desc>elements for arbitrary segmentation.</desc>
  <ptr target="COSE"/>
</classDoc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*May contain* attList class classes desc equiv files part ptr remarks rs

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT classDoc %om.R0; (class, rs?, desc, attList?, remarks?, part?,
classes?, files?, ptr*, equiv*) >
<!ATTLIST classDoc
  %a.global;
  type (model | atts | both) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 27.2 Element Classes; 27 Tag Set Documentation

**<classes>** specifies all the classes of which the documented element or class is a member or subclass.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**names** lists the identifiers of all classes of which the documented element or class is a member or subclass, possibly using parentheses to indicate inheritance.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a list of class names separated by spaces or commas, and optionally enclosed by parentheses; each name should be the class name specified for some element class in the scheme being documented or modified.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```
<classes names="HQINTER INTER COMMON">hqinter
[and indirectly also:] common, inter</classes>
```

This **<classes>** element indicates that the element documented is a member of the class **hqinter**, which is itself a subclass of the classes **inter** and thus also of **common**. The value of the **names** attribute and the content are synonymous, two ways of representing the same information.

```
<classes names="HQINTER">hqinter</classes>
```

This **<classes>** element indicates that the element documented is a member of the class **hqinter**, but gives no indication that **hqinter** is itself a subclass of **phrase**.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* Empty

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT classes %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST classes
  %a.global;
  names CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

*See further* 27.1 The TagDoc Documentation Element; 27.2 Element Classes

**<closer>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divbot

*Example*

```
<div type="letter">
  <p><!-- ... -->
  perhaps you will favour me with a sight
  of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &amp;c. &amp;c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>

<div type="chapter">
  <p><!-- ... -->
  and his heart was going like mad and yes
  I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Z&uuml;rich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914&ndash;1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divbot

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s salute seg sic signed soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* back body div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue group lg performance prologue

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT closer %om.R0; (#PCDATA | signed | dateline | salute
| %m.phrase; | %m.Incl;)* >
<!ATTLIST closer
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 7.2.4 Content of Textual Divisions; 7.2 Elements Common to All Divisions

**<codedCharSet>** (base coded character set) identifies a public or private coded character set which is used as a basic component of a writing system declaration.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from baseStandard

*Note* Reference to a coded character set makes the set of bit-pattern-to-character mappings defined in the coded character set available for use in text encoded with the writing system declaration. Unless the character inventory and mappings are modified by the <exceptions> element, any character in any base coded character set may be used with its standard meaning within text to which the writing system declaration applies. In order to make the mappings of bit patterns to characters more explicit than they sometimes are in character-set standards, the TEI will provide standard writing system declarations which document the bit-pattern-to-character mappings defined by various commonly used coded character sets.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Class* baseStandard

*Data Description* An empty element.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT codedCharSet %om.R0; EMPTY>
```

```

<!ATTLIST codedCharSet
  %a.global;
  %a.baseStandard;>

```

See further 25.4.1 Base Components of the WSD

**<col>** (column) contains one column of a multi-column reference edition.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<(La)page n="32">
  <(La)col n='a'> ... </(La)col>
  <(La)col n='b'> ... </(La)col>
</(La)page>

```

*Note* The <col> tag should be used wherever a standard reference scheme uses references to individual columns of a reference edition; otherwise it need not be used.

*Module* Declared in file teipl2; Auxiliary tag set for concurrent markup of pages and lines

*Data Description* May contain <line> elements, or character data.

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT col %om.R0; (#PCDATA | line)*>
<!ATTLIST col
  %a.global;>

```

See further 31.6 Concurrent Markup for Pages and Lines

**<colloc>** (collocate) contains a collocate of the headword.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, gramInfo)

**type** classifies the collocation, using any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters, e.g. 'preposition'.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; gramInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT colloc %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST colloc
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

See further 12.3.2 Grammatical Information

**<cond>** (conditional feature-structure constraint) defines a conditional feature-structure constraint; the consequent and the antecedent are specified as feature structures or feature-structure groups; the constraint is satisfied if both the antecedent and the consequent *subsume* a given feature structure, or if the antecedent does not.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain an antecedent feature structure, an empty <then> element, and a consequent feature structure.

*May contain* f fAlt fs then

*May occur within* fsConstraints

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT cond %om.R0; ((fs | f | fAlt), then, (fs | f | fAlt))>
<!ATTLIST cond
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<constitution>** describes the internal composition of a text or text sample, for example as fragmentary, complete, etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** specifies how the text was constituted.

*Datatype* (single | composite | frags | unknown)

*Legal values are:*

**single** a single complete text

**composite** a text made by combining several smaller items, each individually complete

**frags** a text made by combining several smaller, not necessarily complete, items

**unknown** composition unknown or unspecified

*Default* single

*Example*

```
<constitution type="frags">Prologues only.</constitution>
```

*Note* The function of this element seems to overlap with both the ORG attribute on DIVs and the samplingDecl in the encodingDesc.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* contains any sequence of phrase level data

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* textDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT constitution %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST constitution
    %a.global;
    type (single | composite | frags | unknown) "single">
```

*See further* 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<corr>** (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**sic** gives the original form of the apparent error in the copy text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and  
 <corr sic="a Table"> a' babbled</corr>  
 of green fields.

**resp** (responsibility) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for suggesting the correction held as the content of the <corr> element.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Note* If the correction was made in the source, this attribute should be used to identify the hand of the corrector.

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the correction held as the content of the <corr> element.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, no attributes are required:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now &mdash;  
how <corr>can we</corr> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

It is also possible to provide a correct reading and to identify the individual responsible for the correction:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now &mdash;  
how <corr sic="we can" resp="MSM">can we</corr> prove or  
disprove anyone's theories?
```

*Note* The <corr> tag is a mirror of <sic>: the latter leaves the original text untouched, giving the correction as an attribute value; the former substitutes the correction, leaving the original reading as an attribute value. The choice between them is up to the encoder.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xpr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT corr %om.RR; %specialPara;>  
<!ATTLIST corr  
  %a.global;  
  sic CDATA #IMPLIED  
  resp CDATA %INHERITED;  
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.5.1 *Correction of Apparent Errors*

**<correction>** (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from declarable)

**status** indicates the degree of correction applied to the text.

*Datatype* (high | medium | low | unknown)

*Legal values are:*

high the text has been thoroughly checked and proofread.

medium the text has been checked at least once.

low the text has not been checked.

unknown the correction status of the text is unknown.

*Default* unknown

**method** indicates the method adopted to indicate corrections within the text.

*Datatype* (silent | tags)

*Legal values are:*

silent corrections have been made silently

tags corrections have been represented using editorial tags

*Default* silent

*Example*

```
<correction><p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the
WordPerfect spelling checker, with a user defined dictionary of 500
extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century Dictionary.</p>
</correction>
```

*Note* May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section 6.5 *Simple Editorial Changes*.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* editorialDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT correction %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST correction
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;
  status (high | medium | low | unknown) "unknown"
  method (silent | tags) "silent">
```

*See further* 5.3.3 *The Editorial Practices Declaration*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<country>** (country) in an address, gives the name of the nation, country, colony, or commonwealth; in a place name given as a hierarchy of geo-political units, the <country> is larger or administratively superior to the <region> and smaller than the <block>.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from names, placePart, typed

*Example*

```
<country n="DK">Denmark</country>
```

*Note* If attributes are used to identify the country referred to (as the n is used above), the values should be taken from recognized lists of abbreviations, e.g. ISO 3166.

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* placePart; names; typed

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr

placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech  
term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* placeName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT country %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST country
  %a.global;
  %a.names;
  %a.typed;>
```

*See further* 20.2 Place Names

**<creation>** contains information about the creation of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<creation>
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>

<creation>
  <date value="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

*Note* The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest; it should not be confused with the <publicationStmnt> element, which records date and place of publication.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* Character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date  
dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss  
handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef  
oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span  
spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* profileDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT creation %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST creation
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.4.1 Creation; 5.4 The Profile Description

**<damage>** contains an area of damage to the text witness.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**type** classifies the damage according to any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any phrase describing the damage, e.g. 'faded', 'overbound', 'water', 'charred with loss of paper'.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**extent** indicates approximately how much text is in the damaged area, in letters, minims, inches, or any appropriate unit, where this cannot be deduced from the contents of the tag. For example, the damage may span structural divisions in the text so that the tag must then be empty of content.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any measurement phrase, e.g. '25 letters', '2 × 3 inches'.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** indicates the individual responsible for identifying the area of damage.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**hand** In the case of damage (deliberate defacement, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the damage.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**agent** In the case of damage resulting from an identifiable cause, signifies the causative agent.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any prose description of the agency of damage.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**degree** Signifies the degree of damage according to a convenient scale. The <damage> tag with the degree attribute should only be used where the text may be read with some confidence; text supplied from other sources should be tagged as <supplied>.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* an alphanumeric categorization of the degree of damage, as '40%'.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The <damage> tag with the degree attribute should only be used where the text may be read with confidence despite the damage. It is appropriate where it is desired to record the fact of damage, though this has not affected the readability of the text (as may be the case with weathered inscriptional materials). Where the damage has rendered the text more or less illegible either the <unclear> tag (for partial illegibility) or the <gap> tag (for complete illegibility, with no text supplied) should be used, with the information concerning the damage given in the attribute values of these tags. See section 18.2.4 *Use of the Gap, Del, Damage, Unclear and Supplied Tags in Combination* for discussion of the use of these tags in particular circumstances.

*Note* Since damage to text witnesses frequently makes them harder to read, the <damage> element will often contain an <unclear> element. If the damaged area is not continuous in the text (e.g. a stain on one side of a page), the <join> element may be used to indicate which <damage> and <unclear> elements are part of the same physical phenomenon. The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 18.2.4 *Use of the Gap, Del, Damage, Unclear and Supplied Tags in Combination* for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr  
*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName

foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT damage %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST damage
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  extent CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF #INHERITED;
  hand IDREF #INHERITED;
  agent CDATA #IMPLIED
  degree CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 18.2.3 *Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text*

**<dataDesc>** specifies the legal content of the element being documented, noting any semantic or application-dependent constraints, as well as constraints enforced by the content model.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<dataDesc>A declarative sentence, an adjectival phrase,
or the word EMPTY.</dataDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* A declarative sentence, an adjectival phrase, or the word EMPTY.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add address att cb corr date dateRange del distinct emph expan foreign gap gi gloss hi index lb measure mentioned milestone name num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled tag term time timeRange title unclear val

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT dataDesc %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST dataDesc
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*

**<datatype>** specifies the *declared value* for an attribute.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<datatype>CDATA</datatype>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* must be a legal keyword or notation name, or a name group.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT datatype %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST datatype
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1.1 *The AttList Documentation Element*

**<date>** contains a date in any format.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, date, terminologyInclusions)

**calendar** indicates the system or calendar to which the date belongs.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Recommended values include: *Gregorian, Julian, Roman, Mosaic, Revolutionary, Islamic.*

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* He was born on  
 <date calendar="Gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date>  
 (<date calendar="Julian" value="1732-02-22">  
 Feb. 11, 1731/32, 0.S.</date>).

**value** gives the value of the date in some standard form, usually yyyy-mm-dd.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string representing a date in standard format; recommended form is ISO 8601:2000 5.2.1.1 Complete representation, extended format (yyyy-mm-dd)

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="Julian" value="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

*Note* For simple dates, the value should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in the form (yyyy-mm-dd) specified by ISO 8601. More complicated dates or special applications may require another calendar or another form; these should be documented in the <stdVals> element in the TEI Header.

**certainty** indicates the degree of precision to be attributed to the date.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any appropriate value, e.g. *ca., approx, after, before.*

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

<date value="1980-02" certainty="approx">early February 1980</date>

Given on the <date value="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

<date value="1990-09">September 1990</date>

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data; date; terminologyInclusions

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell change channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg re recording ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense setting settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term termEntry tig time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

<!ELEMENT date %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>

```

<!ATTLIST date
  %a.global;
  calendar CDATA #IMPLIED
  value CDATA #IMPLIED
  certainty CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

See further 6.4.4 Dates and Times; 5.2.4 Publication, Distribution, etc.; 5.5 The Revision Description; 6.10.2.3 Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details; 13.2 Tags for Terminological Data; 23.2.3 The Setting Description; 20.4 Dates and Time

**<dateline>** contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divbot, divtop

*Example*

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

```

<div type="chapter">
  <p><!-- ... -->
  and his heart was going like mad and yes
  I said yes I will Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Z&uuml;rich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914&ndash;1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>

```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divtop; divbot

*May contain* #PCDATA addSpan address alt altGrp anchor cb certainty date delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone name pb respons span spanGrp time timeline

*May occur within* back body castList closer div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue group lg opener performance prologue

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT dateline %om.R0; ( #PCDATA | date | time
                               | name | address | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST dateline
  %a.global;>

```

See further 7.2.4 Content of Textual Divisions; 7.2.2 Openers and Closers

**<dateRange>** (date range) contains two dates or another phrase delimiting a time period.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, date)

**calendar** indicates the system or calendar to which the date belongs.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Recommended values include: *Gregorian, Julian, Roman, Mosaic, Revolutionary, Islamic.*

*Default* #IMPLIED

**from** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any date in a standard form; recommended form is yyyy-mm-dd.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The value should conform to the standard form declared in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header.

**to** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any date in a standard form; recommended form is yyyy-mm-dd.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The value should conform to the standard form declared in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header.

**exact** indicates the precision to be attached to either or both dates specified.

*Datatype* (to|from|both|none)

*Legal values are:*

to the to date is exact

from the from date is exact

both both dates are exact

none both dates are approximate or unspecified

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <dateRange from="1100" to="1120" exact="from">  
Early 12th century</dateRange>

*Note* date values should conform to the standard form declared in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header.

*Example*

He edited (<dateRange from="1846" to="1848">1846&ndash;48</dateRange>)  
the first collection of Hungarian folk poetry.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data; date

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT dateRange %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST dateRange
  %a.global;
  calendar CDATA #IMPLIED
  from CDATA #IMPLIED
  to CDATA #IMPLIED
  exact (to|from|both|none) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.4 Dates and Times

**<dateStruct>** contains an internally structured representation of a date.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, date, temporalExpr, terminologyInclusions)

**calendar** indicates the system or calendar to which the date belongs.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Recommended values include: *Gregorian, Julian, Roman, Mosaic, Revolutionary, Islamic.*

*Default* #IMPLIED

**exact** indicates the degree of precision to be attributed to the date.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any appropriate value, e.g. *ca., approx, after, before.*

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<dateStruct value="1990-09">
  <month>September</month>
  <year>1990</year>
</dateStruct>
```

Given on the

```
<dateStruct value="1977-06-12">
  <day reg="12">Twelfth</day> Day of
  <month reg="06">June</month>
  <year reg="1977" type="nominal">in the Year of Our Lord
    One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven</year>
<dateStruct>
  <offset>of</offset>
  <year reg="1776">the Republic</year>
  <distance>the Two Hundredth and first</distance>
</dateStruct> and
<dateStruct>
  <offset>of</offset>
  <year reg="1891">the University</year>
  <distance>the Eighty-Sixth.</distance>
</dateStruct>
</dateStruct>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data; date; terminologyInclusions; temporalExpr

*Data Description* May contain character data and temporal expression elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty dateStruct day delSpan distance fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap hour index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone minute month occasion offset pb respons second span spanGrp timeStruct timeline week year

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyp h impratur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term termEntry tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT dateStruct %om.RR; (#PCDATA | %m.temporalExpr; | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST dateStruct
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;
  calendar CDATA #IMPLIED
  exact CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 20.4 *Dates and Time*; 6.4.4 *Dates and Times*; 5.2.4 *Publication, Distribution, etc.*; 5.5 *The Revision Description*; 6.10.2.3 *Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*; 23.2.3 *The Setting Description*

**<day>** (day) the day component of a structured date.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

*Example*

```
<dateStruct value="1993-05-14">
  <day type="name">Friday</day>,
  <day type="number">14</day>
  <month type="name">May</month>
  <year>1993</year>
</dateStruct>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT day %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST day
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;>
```

*See further* 20.4 Dates and Time

**<def>** (definition) contains definition text in a dictionary entry.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree etym hom re sense trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT def %om.RO; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST def
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.3.1 Definitions

**<default>** specifies the default declared value for an attribute.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<default>#IMPLIED</default>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* any legal declared value or TEI-defined keyword

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT default %om.RO; (#PCDATA) >
<!ATTLIST default
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1.1 The AttList Documentation Element

**<del>** (deletion) contains a letter, word or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**type** classifies the type of deletion using any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string identifying the class of deletion.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* No recommendation of any particular typology is made here; note however that the type attribute should not be used to record the manner in which the deletion is signalled in the source. This should be recorded using the global *rend* attribute, with values such as ‘subpunction’ (dots below the line indicate matter to be deleted); ‘overstrike’ (lines through the text indicated matter to be deleted); ‘erasure’ (material to be deleted has been erased, but remains legible enough to transcribe); ‘bracketed’ (brackets around the material indicate that it is spurious or superfluous), etc.

**status** may be used to indicate faulty deletions, e.g. strikeouts which include too much or too little text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any description of flaws in the marking of a deletion, e.g. ‘excess left’, ‘excess right’, ‘short left’, ‘short right’.

*Default* unremarkable

*Note* Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts.

**resp** (responsible) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the hand of the deletion.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text’s creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the identification of the hand of the deletion.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the deletion.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Example*

```
<1>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del> weht der Wind</1>
```

*Note* Cf. <gap>. Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*). This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <del> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause for the omission from the

transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections 18.1.7 *Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription* and, for the close association of the <del> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements (the latter three tags available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources), 18.2.4 *Use of the Gap, Del, Damage, Unclear and Supplied Tags in Combination*. The <del> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT del %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST del
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  status CDATA "unremarkable"
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;>
```

*See further* 6.5.3 *Additions, Deletions, and Omissions*

**<delSpan>** (deleted span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise signaled as superfluous or spurious by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from editIncl)

**type** classifies the deletion, using any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

overstrike deletion indicated by line crossing out the text.

erasure deletion indicated by erasure of the text.

bracketed deletion indicated by brackets in the text or margin.

subpunction deletion indicated by dots beneath the letters deleted.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsible) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the hand of the deletion.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the identification of the hand of the deletion.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the deletion.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**to** identifies the endpoint of the deleted passage, by supplying the value of the id attribute of an <anchor> or other empty element placed there.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* any valid identifier.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* Both the beginning and the end of the deleted material must be marked; the beginning by the <delSpan> element itself, the end by the to attribute. The element pointed at by to is understood to be included within the deleted passage.

**status** indicates whether the deletion is faulty, e.g. by including too much or too little text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

excess start some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excess end some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

short start some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

short end some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.

*Default* unremarkable

*Note* Marking a deletion as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

#### *Example*

```
<p>Paragraph partially deleted. This is the undeleted
portion <delSpan resp="author" to="a23"/>and this the deleted
portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph deleted together with neighboring material.</p>
<p>Second fully deleted paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially deleted; in the middle of this
paragraph the deletion ends and the anchor point marks
the resumption <anchor id="a23"/> of the text. ...</p>
```

*Note* Both the beginning and ending of the deleted sequence must be marked: the beginning by the <delSpan> element, the ending by the target of the to attribute. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <delSpan> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause for the omission from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections 18.1.7 *Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription* and, for the close association

of the <delSpan> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements, 18.2.4 *Use of the Gap, Del, Damage, Unclear and Supplied Tags in Combination*. The <delSpan> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr  
*Class* editIncl

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT de1Span %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST de1Span
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;
  to IDREF #REQUIRED
  status CDATA "unremarkable">
```

*See further* 18.1.4 *Additions and Deletions*

**<derivation>** describes the nature and extent of indebtedness or derivativeness of this text with respect to others.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** categorizes the derivation of the text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

original text is original

revision text is a revision of some other text

translation text is a translation of some other text

abridgment text is an abridged version of some other text

plagiarism text is plagiarized from some other text

traditional text has no obvious source but is one of a number derived from some common ancestor

*Default* #IMPLIED

#### Example

```
<derivation type="original"/>
```

*Note* For derivative texts, details of the ancestor may be included in the source description.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss

handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef  
oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span  
spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* textDesc

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT derivation %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>  
<!ATTLIST derivation  
    %a.global;  
    type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<desc>** (description) (in a writing system declaration) contains a description of a character or character form.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

#### Example

```
<form string="a">  
  <desc>Latin lower-case letter A</desc>  
</form>  
  
<form string="∞" entityLoc="infinity">  
  <desc>author's private symbol for infinity: a parabola open to the right,  
    with a dot at its focal point. In general, the character rests on the  
    base line and rises to about the height of a typical ascender.</desc>  
</form>
```

*Note* The <desc> element should usually contain the name of the character or character form; in some cases further information (e.g. the description of the character's shape) will be useful, as shown in the example.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain character data only.

*May contain* #PCDATA

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT desc %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>  
<!ATTLIST desc  
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 25.4.2 *Exceptions in the WSD*

**<desc>** (description) contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute, or attribute value.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

#### Example

```
<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for  
an element, attribute, attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add address att bibl biblFull biblStruct cb cit corr date dateRange del distinct emph expan  
foreign gap gi gloss hi index label lb list listBibl measure mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref  
reg rs sic soCalled stage tag term time timeRange title unclear val

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT desc %om.R0; %paraContent;>  
<!ATTLIST desc  
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*; 27.1.1 *The AttList Documentation Element*;  
27.2 *Element Classes*; 27.3 *Entity Documentation*

**<descrip>** (description) within a **<termEntry>** element, contains a definition, context or explanation used to explain or define the concept represented by a **<term>** or an **<otherForm>**.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from terminologyMisc)

**type** classifies the description using some convenient typology, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**definition** The description provides all the information needed to differentiate one concept from all other related concepts in the given domain.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* A much fuller list of values for the type attribute may be generated from the dictionary of data element types under preparation as ISO TC 37/SC 3/WD 12 620, Computational Aids in Terminology. See ISO 12 620 for fuller details.

*Module* Declared in file teite2n; Declared in file teite2f; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology

*Class* terminologyMisc

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xprf xref

*May occur within* ofig termEntry tig

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT descrip %om.RO; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST descrip
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 13.4.2 DTD Fragment for Flat Style; 13.4.1 DTD Fragment for Nested Style; 13.2 Tags for Terminological Data

**<dft>** (Default value) provides default value for a feature.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from singleVal

*Example*

```
<f name="gender"><dft/></f>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* singleVal

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT dft %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST dft
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 16.8 Boolean, Default and Uncertain Values

**<dictScrap>** encloses a part of a dictionary entry in which other phrase-level dictionary elements are freely combined.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaryTopLevel

*Note* This element is used to mark part of a dictionary entry in which lower level dictionary elements appear, but which does not itself form an identifiable structural unit.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel

*Data Description* May contain any dictionary elements in any combination.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption case castList cb certainty cit cl colloc corr damage date dateRange dateStruct def del delSpan distinct eg emph etym expan fLib figure foreign form formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap gen geogName gloss gramGrp handShift hi hom hyph index interp interpGrp itype join joinGrp label lang lb lbl link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone mood move name note num number oRef oVar orgName orig orth pRef pVar pb per persName phr placeName pos pron ptr q quote re ref reg respons restore rs s seg sense sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage stress subc superEntry supplied syll table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tns tr trans unclear usg view w witDetail xptr xr xref

*May occur within* entry hom re sense superEntry

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT dictScrap %om.R0; ( #PCDATA | %m.dictionaryParts; |  
%m.phrase; | %m.inter; | %m.Incl; )* >  
<!ATTLIST dictScrap  
%a.global;>
```

*See further* 12.1 *Dictionary Body and Overall Structure*; 12.2 *The Structure of Dictionary Entries*

**<direction>** specifies one or more conventional directions in which a language is written using a given script.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**chars** (characters) indicates the order in which characters within a line are conventionally presented in this writing system

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

LR left to right  
RL right to left  
TB top to bottom  
BT bottom to top

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* If the characters follow each other in some order other than top-to-bottom, bottom-to-top, left-to-right, or right-to-left, then some value other than those indicated should be used.

**lines** indicates the order in which lines conventionally follow each other in this writing system.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

TB top to bottom  
BT bottom to top  
LR left to right  
RL right to left

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* If the lines follow each other in some order other than top-to-bottom, bottom-to-top, left-to-right, or right-to-left, then some value other than those indicated should be used.

*Example*

```
<writingSystemDeclaration lang="eng" id="DEU"  
name="//TEI P2: 1993//WSD Modern German//en" date="1993-06-01">  
<language iso639="deu">New High German</language>  
<script>Latin script with diacritics.</script>  
<direction chars="LR" lines="TB"/>
```

```
<!-- ... -->
</writingSystemDeclaration>
```

If more than one direction is specified, it means that the script in question may be written in any of the directions named. In some cases, the directions may be mixed within a single document, in others not; no information is given on this point by the writing system declaration, as it is not usefully formalizable. Experts on the script must be consulted for details. The following example shows one way to declare that a script may be written in any horizontal or vertical direction:

```
<writingSystemDeclaration lang="eng" id="JPN"
  name="//TEI P2: 1993//WSD JIS 0208//en" date="1993-06-01">
  <language iso639="jpn">Modern Japanese</language>
  <script>normal Japanese writing, with mixture of hiragana,
    katakana, and kanji.</script>
  <direction chars="LR" lines="TB"/>
  <direction chars="RL" lines="TB"/>
  <direction chars="LR" lines="BT"/>
  <direction chars="RL" lines="BT"/>
  <direction chars="TB" lines="LR"/>
  <direction chars="BT" lines="LR"/>
  <direction chars="TB" lines="RL"/>
  <direction chars="BT" lines="RL"/>
</writingSystemDeclaration>
```

The following example shows another way to specify that a script may be written in any horizontal or vertical direction:

```
<writingSystemDeclaration lang="eng" id="JPN"
  name="//TEI P2: 1993//WSD JIS 0208//en" date="1993-06-01">
  <language iso639="jpn">Modern Japanese</language>
  <script>normal Japanese, with mixture of hiragana, katakana,
    and kanji.</script>
  <direction chars="LR RL" lines="TB BT"/>
  <direction chars="TB BT" lines="LR RL"/>
</writingSystemDeclaration>
```

In some cases, the lines and chars attributes may need to take special values. Some scripts are written in ‘boustrophedon’ (turning back and forth): i.e. one line is written left to right, the next right to left, and so on. Such a writing system might have its direction declared as shown:

```
<direction chars="boustrophedon: LR, then RL, then LR, etc."
  lines="TB"/>
```

*Note* This element describes conventional presentation; all scripts are subject to unusual treatment in special circumstances, and such unusual directions need not be described here. The treatment of numerals in Latin, Hebrew, and Arabic script, being well understood, need not be documented separately here.<sup>176</sup> The `<direction>` element is informational only, not normative. It is intended to alert those responsible for implementing support for a given writing system to an essential fact of how it is written. If only a single direction is specified, it is safe to infer that the script may legitimately be presented in that direction. If multiple directions are specified, it may be legitimate to present text in any one of them, or it may be necessary to support multiple directions in display of a single document. If the latter, then changes of direction should be given using the global `rend` attribute. If no direction element is given, the only safe assumption is that any direction is possible and experts must be consulted before attempting to implement support for the writing system.

*Module* Declared in file `teiwsd2`; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* Empty.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT direction %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST direction
  %a.global;
```

<sup>176</sup> Although the scripts run in opposite directions, they write numbers in the same direction; the usual view is that the numbers in Hebrew and Arabic run left to right, like those in Latin script, but it is also possible to claim that the numbers in Latin scripts run right to left, like those in Arabic and Hebrew. There is no single satisfactory answer to this question.

chars CDATA #REQUIRED  
lines CDATA #REQUIRED>

See further 25.3 Describing the Writing System; 25.1 Overall Structure of Writing System Declaration

**<distance>** (distance) that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the distance between the place or time denoted by it and the place or time referred to within it.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from placePart, temporalExpr)

**exact** indicates the degree of accuracy associated with the distance.

*Datatype* ( Y | N | U )

*Legal values are:*

Y The distance is exact.  
N The distance is approximate.  
U Accuracy unavailable or unknown.

*Default* U

*Example*

```
<placeName>  
  <distance reg="3.2 km">two miles</distance>  
  <offset>north east of</offset>  
  <placeName>Manchester</placeName>  
</placeName>  
  
<dateStruct>  
  <distance exact="N" reg="14 d">a fortnight</distance>  
  <offset>after</offset>  
  <occasion>Michaelmas</occasion>  
</dateStruct>  
  
<timeStruct>  
  <distance>20 minutes</distance>  
  <offset>before</offset>  
  <hour>noon</hour>.  
</timeStruct>
```

*Note* This is a specialized form of measure, used only within relative temporal and spatial expressions.

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr; placePart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpnr xref

*May occur within* dateStruct placeName timeStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT distance %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>  
<!ATTLIST distance  
  %a.global;  
  %a.temporalExpr;  
  exact ( Y | N | U ) "U">
```

See further 20.2 Place Names

**<distinct>** (distinct) identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from hqphrase)

**type** specifies the sublanguage or register to which the word or phrase is being assigned

*Datatype* CDATA

- Values* a semi-open user-defined list  
*Default* #IMPLIED
- time** specifies how the phrase is distinct diachronically  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* a semi-open user-defined list  
*Default* #IMPLIED
- space** specifies how the phrase is distinct diatopically  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* a semi-open user-defined list  
*Default* #IMPLIED
- social** specifies how the phrase is distinct diastatically  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* a semi-open user-defined list  
*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

Next morning a boy in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a <distinct type="ps\_slang">fag</distinct> of Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which King <distinct type="archaic">would fain</distinct> keep secret.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT distinct %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST distinct
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  time CDATA #IMPLIED
  space CDATA #IMPLIED
  social CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.3.2.3 *Other Linguistically Distinct Material*; 6.3.2 *Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language*

**<distributor>** supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

**Module** Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

**May occur within** publicationStm

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT distributor %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST distributor
    %a.global;>
```

See further 5.2.4 *Publication, Distribution, etc.*

**<div>** (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

**Example**

```
<body>
  <div type="part"><head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the
    object, to repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter"><head>The Nature of Authority</head>
  <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their
    object the greatest happiness of the greatest number...</p>
  <div n="1.1" type="section"><head>Analysis of Authority</head>
  <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or
    influence to be attached to authority ... </p>
  </div><!-- end of section 1.1 -->
  <div n="1.2" type="section">
  <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
  <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy
    when... </p>
  </div><!-- end of section 1.2 -->
  <!-- other sections here -->
</div><!-- end of chapter 1 -->
<!-- other chapters here -->
</div><!-- end of part A -->
<!-- other parts here -->
</body>
```

**Module** Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** divn; declaring

**Data Description** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**May contain** ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

**May occur within** back body div front

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT div %om.R0; ( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl; )*, (((div|divGen),
    (%m.Incl;)*+ | ((%component; , (%m.Incl;)*+),
    ((div|divGen), (%m.Incl;)*+))),
    ((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST div
    %a.global;
    %a.divn;
    %a.declaring;>
```

See further 7.1 *Divisions of the Body*; 13.4 *Overall Structure of Terminological Documents*; 7.1.1 *Un-numbered Divisions*

**<divGen>** (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from front)

**type** specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

`index` an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

`toc` a table of contents

`figlist` a list of figures

`tablist` a list of tables

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

*Example* One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the index attribute on the <index> element has been used to specify index entries for multiple indices, 1 and 2:

```
<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
    <listBibl>
      <bibl> <!-- ... -->
    </bibl><!-- ... -->
    </listBibl>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="index 1"/>
    <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="index 2"/>
  </div1>
</back>
```

Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front>
<titlePage> ... </titlePage>
<divGen type="toc"/>
<div><head>Preface</head>
<p> ... </p>
</div>
</front>
```

*Note* This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software. The `n` attribute should be used to give a title for the text division being generated.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* front

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* back body div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 front

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT divGen %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST divGen
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.8.2 *Index Entries*

**<div0>** (level-0 text division) contains the largest possible subdivision of the body of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

*Example*

```
<div0 n="I" id="LEVI" type="part">
  <head>Part I: Of Man </head>
  <div1 n="1" id="LEVI1" type="chapter">
    <head>Chap. I. Of Sense </head>
    <p>Concerning the Thoughts of man... </p>
  </div1>
  <!-- further chapters here -->
</div0>
<div0 n="II" id="LEVII" type="part">
  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
  <!-- ... -->
</div0>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div1 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* body

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT div0 %om.R0;
  ( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ( ((div1 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)+
    | ( (%component;, (%m.Incl;)*)+,
      ((div1 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)*)),
    ((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST div0
  %a.global;
  %a.divn;
  %a.declaring;>
```

*See further* 7.1.2 *Numbered Divisions*; 13.4 *Overall Structure of Terminological Documents*

**<div1>** (level-1 text division) contains a first-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text (the largest, if <div0> is not used, the second largest if it is).

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

*Example*

```
<div1 id="levi" n="I" type="part">
  <head>Part I: Of Man </head>
  <div2 id="levi1" n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>Chap. I. Of Sense </head>
    <p>Concerning the Thoughts of man... </p>
  </div2>
  <!-- further chapters here -->
</div1>
<div1 id="levii" n="II" type="part">
  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
  <!-- ... -->
</div1>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div2 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* back body div0 front

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT div1 %om.R0;
  ( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ( ((div2 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)+
    | ( (%component;; (%m.Incl;)*)+,
      ((div2 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)**) ),
    ((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)* )>
<!ATTLIST div1
  %a.global;
  %a.divn;
  %a.declaring;>
```

*See further* 7.1.2 *Numbered Divisions*; 13.4 *Overall Structure of Terminological Documents*

**<div2>** (level-2 text division) contains a second-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

#### Example

```
<div1 n="2" type="part">
  <head>The Second Partition:
    The Cure of Melancholy</head>
  <div2 n="2.1" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.1.1" type="member">
      <div4 n="2.1.1.1" type="subsection">
        <head>Unlawful Cures rejected.</head>
        <p>Inveterate melancholy, howsoever it may seem to
          be a continue, inexorable disease, hard to be
          cured, accompanying them to their graves most part
          (as <ref target="a">Montanus</ref> observes), yet many
          times it may be helped...
        </p>
      </div4>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.2" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
      <p><!-- ... -->
      </p>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.3" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.3.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. III. Memb. I</head>
      <p><!-- ... -->
      </p>
    </div3>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div3 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone

move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry  
timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* div1

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT div2 %om.R0;  
( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ( ((div3 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)+  
  | ( (%component;, (%m.Incl;)*)+,  
    ((div3 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)*)),  
  ((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>  
<!ATTLIST div2  
  %a.global;  
  %a.divn;  
  %a.declaring;>
```

*See further* 7.1.2 *Numbered Divisions*; 13.4 *Overall Structure of Terminological Documents*

**<div3>** (level-3 text division) contains a third-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

*Example*

```
<div2 n="2.2" type="section">  
  <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">  
    <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>  
    <p><!-- ... -->  
  </div3>  
  <div3 n="2.2.2" type="member">  
    <head>Memb. II  
    Retention and Evacuation rectified.</head>  
    <p><!-- ... -->  
  </div3>  
  <div3 n="2.2.3" type="member">  
    <head>Memb. III  
    Ayr rectified. With a digression of the Ayr.</head>  
    <p><!-- ... -->  
  </div3>  
</div2>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit  
closer dateline delSpan div4 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap  
graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone  
move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry  
timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* div2

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT div3 %om.R0;  
( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ( ((div4 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)+  
  | ( (%component;, (%m.Incl;)*)+,  
    ((div4 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)*)),  
  ((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>  
<!ATTLIST div3  
  %a.global;  
  %a.divn;  
  %a.declaring;>
```

*See further* 7.1.2 *Numbered Divisions*; 13.4 *Overall Structure of Terminological Documents*

**<div4>** (level-4 text division) contains a fourth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

*Example*

```
<div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
  <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
  <div4 n="2.2.1.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect I. &mdash; Dyet rectified in substance.</head>
    <p>Diet, <term lang="grk">diaitotiku</term>,
    <term lang="lat">victus</term> or living
    <!-- ... -->
  </p>
</div4>
  <div4 n="2.2.2.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect II. &mdash; Dyet rectified in quantity.</head>
    <p>Man alone, saith Cardan, eates and drinks without
    appetite, and useth all his pleasures without necessity
    <!-- ... -->
  </p>
</div4>
</div3>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div5 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* div3

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT div4 %om.R0;
 ( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ( ((div5 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)+
 | ( (%component;, (%m.Incl;)*)+,
 ((div5 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)**) ),
 ((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)* )>
<!ATTLIST div4
 %a.global;
 %a.divn;
 %a.declaring;>
```

*See further* 7.1.2 *Numbered Divisions*; 13.4 *Overall Structure of Terminological Documents*

**<div5>** (level-5 text division) contains a fifth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

*Example*

```
<!-- see examples for higher level divisions -->
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div6 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* div4

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT div5 %om.R0; ( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ( ((div6 | divGen),
(%m.Incl;)*)+
| ( (%component;, (%m.Incl;)*)+,
((div6 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)**) ),
((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST div5
%a.global;
%a.divn;
%a.declaring;>
```

See further 7.1.2 Numbered Divisions; 13.4 Overall Structure of Terminological Documents

**<div6>** (level-6 text division) contains a sixth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

### Example

```
<!-- see examples for higher level divisions -->
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan div7 divGen docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* div5

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT div6 %om.R0;
( (%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ( ((div7 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)*)+
| ( (%component;, (%m.Incl;)*)+,
((div7 | divGen), (%m.Incl;)**) ),
((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST div6
%a.global;
%a.divn;
%a.declaring;>
```

See further 7.1.2 Numbered Divisions; 13.4 Overall Structure of Terminological Documents

**<div7>** (level-7 text division) contains the smallest possible subdivision of the front, body or back of a text, larger than a paragraph.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, divn

### Example

```
<!-- see examples for higher level divisions -->
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divn; declaring

*Data Description* any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* div6

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT div7
```

```

%om.R0; ((%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*,
          (%component;; (%m.Incl;)*)+, ((%m.divbot;),
          (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST div7
          %a.global;
          %a.divn;
          %a.declaring;>

```

See further 7.1.2 Numbered Divisions; 13.4 Overall Structure of Terminological Documents

**<docAuthor>** (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a <byLine>).

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divtop, fmchunk, tpParts

*Note* The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byLine> element is used or not.

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* tpParts; divtop; fmchunk

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* back body byline castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue front group lg performance prologue titlePage

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT docAuthor %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST docAuthor
          %a.global;>

```

See further 7.5 Title Pages

**<docDate>** (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from divtop, fmchunk, tpParts)

**value** gives the value of the date in a standard form.

*Datatype* %ISO-date;

*Values* a date in ISO standard form, generally ISO 8601:2000 5.2.1.1 Complete representation, extended format (yyyy-mm-dd). If the date in the source was not in the Gregorian calendar it should be converted to Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian here; alternatively, the fact that it was not converted should be documented in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <docDate value="1548-04-07">The.xxviii.day of <name>Marche</name>  
<lb/>the yere of our lorde.  
<lb/>M.D.XLVIII.</docDate>

*Note* For simple dates, the value should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in the form (yyyy-mm-dd) specified by ISO 8601. More complicated dates or special applications may require another calendar or another form; these should be documented in the <stdVals> element in the TEI Header.

*Example*

```

<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>

```

*Note* Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* tpParts; divtop; fmchunk

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* back body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docImprint epilogue front group lg performance prologue titlePage

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT docDate %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST docDate
    %a.global;
    value %ISO-date; #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 7.5 Title Pages

**<docEdition>** (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from fmchunk, tpParts

*Example*

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

*Note* Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* tpParts; fmchunk

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* front titlePage

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT docEdition %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST docEdition
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 7.5 Title Pages

**<docImprint>** (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from fmchunk, tpParts

*Example*

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
  at
  <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in
  <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
```

```

<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>

```

*Note* Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* tpParts; fmchunk

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct docDate emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* front titlePage

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT docImprint %om.R0; (#PCDATA | %m.phrase; | pubPlace |
  docDate | publisher | %m.Incl;)* >
<!ATTLIST docImprint
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 7.5 Title Pages

**<docTitle>** (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from fmchunk, tpParts

*Example*

```

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD,
    VARIOURVM.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE
    PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.
  </titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* tpParts; fmchunk

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline titlePart

*May occur within* front titlePage

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT docTitle %om.R0; ((%m.Incl;)*, (titlePart, (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST docTitle
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 7.5 Title Pages

**<domain>** (Domain of use) describes the most important social context in which the text was realized or for which it is intended, for example private vs. public, education, religion, etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** categorizes the domain of use.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

art art and entertainment  
 domestic domestic and private

religious religious and ceremonial  
business business and work place  
education education  
govt government and law  
public other forms of public context

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<domain type="domestic"></domain>
```

```
<domain type="rel">religious broadcast</domain>
```

*Note* The list presented here is primarily for illustrative purposes.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* textDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT domain %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>  
<!ATTLIST domain  
  %a.global;  
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<edition>** (Edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

*Example*

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>  
</edition>  
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* bibl editionStmnt monogr

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT edition %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>  
<!ATTLIST edition  
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.2.2 *The Edition Statement*

**<editionStmnt>** (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<editionStmnt>  
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>  
  <respStmnt>  
    <resp>Adapted by </resp>
```

```

      <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
    </respStmt>
  </editionStmt>

  <editionStmt>
    <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
    </p>
  </editionStmt>

```

**Module** Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**May contain** edition p respStmt

**May occur within** biblFull fileDesc

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT editionStmt %om.R0; ( (edition, respStmt*) | p+ ) >
<!ATTLIST editionStmt
  %a.global;>

```

**See further** 5.2.2 *The Edition Statement*; 5.2 *The File Description*

**<editor>** (editor) secondary *statement of responsibility* for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from biblPart)

**role** specifies the nature of the intellectual responsibility

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* semi-open list (examples might include: translator, editor, compiler, illustrator, etc.)

*Default* editor

**Example**

```

<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>

```

**Note** Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

**Module** Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** biblPart

**Data Description** A consistent format should be adopted

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

**May occur within** analytic bibl monogr series titleStmt

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT editor %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST editor
  %a.global;
  role CDATA "editor">

```

**See further** 6.10.2.2 *Authors, Titles, and Editors*

**<editorialDecl>** (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

**Example**

```

<editorialDecl id="e2">
  <normalization source="W9">

```

```

    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
    Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
  </p>
</normalization>
  <quotation marks="all" form="std">
    <p>All opening quotation marks converted to &odq; all closing
    quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>

```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* correction hyphenation interpretation normalization p quotation segmentation stdVals

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT editorialDecl %om.R0; ( p+ | ((correction | normalization
  | quotation | hyphenation | interpretation
  | segmentation | stdVals)+, p*))>
<!ATTLIST editorialDecl
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>

```

See further 5.3.3 *The Editorial Practices Declaration*; 5.3 *The Encoding Description*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<education>** contains a brief prose description of the educational background of a participant.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from demographic

*Example*

```

<education>Left school at age 16</education>

```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT education %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST education
  %a.global;>

```

See further 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<eg>** contains a single example demonstrating the use of an element or attribute.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<exemplum>
  <p>The <gi>term</gi> element may be used to mark any
  technical term:</p>
  <eg><![CDATA[This <term>recursion</term> is giving me a headache.]]></eg>
</exemplum>

```

*Note* If the example contains SGML or XML markup, either it should be enclosed within a CDATA marked section, or character entity references must be used to represent the markup delimiters.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree etym hom re sense trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT eg %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST eg
  %a.global;>
```

See further 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*; 27.1.1 *The AttList Documentation Element*

**<eg>** (example (exempli gratia)) (in a dictionary) contains an example text containing at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described; examples may be quoted from (named) authors or contrived.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel

*Note* In some dictionaries the quoted example may be followed by a bibliographic citation for the source; this citation may be tagged with the tags described in section 6.10 *Bibliographic Citations and References*. The quotation and the indication of its source should be enclosed in a <cit> element.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain a quotation, pronunciation, definition, or translation information.

*May contain* case cit colloc def eg etym form gen gramGrp hom hyph itype lbl mood number oRef oVar orth pRef pVar per pos pron q quote re sense stress subc superEntry syll tns tr trans usg xr

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree etym hom re sense trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT eg %om.R0; ( q | quote | cit | %m.dictionaryParts;
  | %m.formPointers; )+ >
<!ATTLIST eg
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

See further 12.3.5.1 *Examples*

**<eLeaf>** (Leaf of an embedding tree.) provides explicitly for a leaf of an embedding tree, which may also be encoded with the <eTree> element.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**label** gives a label for a leaf of an embedding tree.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**value** provides the value of an embedding leaf, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* A valid identifier of a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<eLeaf label="with" value="fswith"/>
```

*Note* The <eTree> tag may be used if the encoder does not wish to distinguish by name between nonleaf and leaf nodes in embedding trees; they are distinguished by their arrangement.

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* eTree triangle

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT eLeaf %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST eLeaf
  %a.global;
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  value IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

See further 21.3 Another Tree Notation

**<elemDecl>** (element declaration) contains the text of a declaration for the element documented.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example* The contents of this element are usually surrounded by a CDATA marked section, which prevents the markup-declaration-open delimiter (<!) at the beginning of the element content from being recognized by the parser (and thus causing an error):

```
<elemDecl>
<![&nil;CDATA[
<!ELEMENT list (head?, ((item*) | (label, item)+) ) >
]&nil;]></elemDecl>
```

The markup-declaration-open delimiter can however also be given as an entity reference:

```
<elemDecl>
&lt;!ELEMENT list (head?, ((item*) | (label, item)+) ) >
</elemDecl>
```

*Note* When used to document an SGML DTD, the reference concrete syntax must be employed.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* Contains a statement in the DTD language, which can be used to construct an element declaration.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT elemDecl %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST elemDecl
    %a.global;>
```

See further 27.1 The TagDoc Documentation Element

**<emph>** (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from hqphrase

*Example*

You took the car and did <emph>what</emph>?!!

```
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said. <q><emph>What
does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph></q>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*Data Description* free prose

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT emph %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST emph
    %a.global;>
```

See further 6.3.2.2 *Emphatic Words and Phrases*; 6.3.2 *Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language*

**<encodingDesc>** (Encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* classDecl editorialDecl fsdDecl metDecl p projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl tagsDecl variantEncoding

*May occur within* teiHeader

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT encodingDesc %om.RR; (projectDesc*, samplingDecl*,
    editorialDecl*, tagsDecl?, refsDecl*,
    classDecl*, metDecl*, fsdDecl*,
    variantEncoding*, p* )>
<!ATTLIST encodingDesc
    %a.global;>
```

See further 5.3 *The Encoding Description*; 5.1.1 *The TEI Header and Its Components*

**<entDoc>** (entity documentation) formally documents a single named entity used within an SGML or XML encoding scheme.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** indicates whether this is a general or a parameter entity.

*Datatype* (pe | ge)

*Legal values are:*

pe parameter entity

ge general entity

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```
<entDoc id="EXTPTR" type="pe">
  <entName>extPtr</entName>
  <rs>extended-pointer expression</rs>
  <desc>used as the declared value of an attribute, indicates that all
    values of that attribute must be valid expressions in the TEI
    extended pointer notation.</desc>
  <string>'CDATA'</string>
  <ptr target="SAXR1"/>
</entDoc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*May contain* desc entName equiv ptr remarks rs string

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT entDoc %om.RR; (entName, rs?, desc, remarks?, string, ptr*,
    equiv*)>
<!ATTLIST entDoc
    %a.global;
    type (pe | ge) #REQUIRED>
```

See further 27.3 *Entity Documentation*; 27 *Tag Set Documentation*

**<entitySet>** (base entity set) identifies a public or private entity set whose mappings between entity names and characters are to be incorporated (perhaps with modifications) into this writing system declaration.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from baseStandard

*Note* Reference in a WSD to an entity set makes the set of entity-name-to-character mappings defined in the entity set available for use in text to which the WSD applies. Unless the character-to-entity-name mappings are modified by the <exceptions> element, any name in the entity set referred to may be used with its standard meaning in any text to which the WSD applies. Since standard public entity sets are not always completely explicit about the distinctions among characters, glyphs, graphemes, and allographs, the TEI will provide standard writing system declarations which explicitly document the mappings provided by some commonly used public entity sets; it is recommended that similar documentation be provided for locally developed entity sets.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Class* baseStandard

*Data Description* Empty.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT entitySet %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST entitySet
  %a.global;
  %a.baseStandard;>
```

*See further* 25.4.1 Base Components of the WSD

**<entName>** (entity name) contains the full name of an entity, excluding the percent sign in the case of a parameter entity.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<entName>component.seq</entName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* Must be a valid name.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT entName %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST entName
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.3 Entity Documentation

**<entry>** contains a reasonably well-structured dictionary entry.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.dictionaries, entries

*Note* Like all elements, <entry> inherits an id attribute from the class *global*. No restrictions are placed on the method used to construct ids; one convenient method is to use the orthographic form of the headword, appending a disambiguating number where necessary. Identification codes are sometimes included on machine-readable tapes of dictionaries for in-house use.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* entries; comp.dictionaries

*Data Description* Contains any number of any top level dictionary elements; usually grouped by homonym or sense or a combination of the two.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty def delSpan dictScrap eg etym fLib form fs fsLib fvLib gap gramGrp hom index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone note pb re respons sense span spanGrp timeline trans usg xr

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set superEntry

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT entry %om.R0; ( hom | sense | %m.dictionaryTopLevel;
  | %m.Incl; )+>
<!ATTLIST entry
  %a.global;
  %a.entries;>
```

See further 12.1 *Dictionary Body and Overall Structure*; 12.2 *The Structure of Dictionary Entries*

**<entryFree>** contains a dictionary entry which does not necessarily conform to the constraints imposed by the <entry> element.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.dictionaries, dictionaries, entries

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* comp.dictionaries; entries; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain any dictionary elements in any combination.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption case castList cb certainty cit cl colloc corr damage date dateRange dateStruct def del delSpan distinct eg emph etym expan fLib figure foreign form formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap gen geogName gloss gramGrp handShift hi hom hyp index interp interpGrp itype join joinGrp label lang lb lbl link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone mood move name note num number oRef oVar orgName orig orth pRef pVar pb per persName phr placeName pos pron ptr q quote re ref reg respons restore rs s seg sense sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage stress subc superEntry supplied syll table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tns tr trans unclear usg view w witDetail xptr xr xref

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT entryFree %om.R0; ( #PCDATA | %m.dictionaryParts; |
                               %m.phrase; | %m.inter; | %m.Incl; )* >

<!ATTLIST entryFree
  %a.global;
  %a.entries;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

See further 12.1 *Dictionary Body and Overall Structure*; 12.2 *The Structure of Dictionary Entries*

**<epigraph>** (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start of a section or chapter, or on a title page.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divbot, divtop, fmchunk, tpParts

*Example*

```
<epigraph lang="lat">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divtop; tpParts; divbot; fmchunk

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor bibl biblFull biblStruct camera caption castList cb certainty cit delSpan eTree entry entryFree event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note p pause pb q quote respons shift sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* back body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue front group lg opener performance prologue titlePage

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT epigraph %om.RR; (%component.seq;)>
<!ATTLIST epigraph
  %a.global;>
```

See further 7.2.4 *Content of Textual Divisions*; 7.2 *Elements Common to All Divisions*; 7.5 *Title Pages*

**<epilogue>** contains the epilogue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from `dramafont`

*Example*

```
<epilogue>
  <head>Written by <name>Colley Cibber, Esq</name> and
    spoken by <name>Mrs. Cibber</name></head>
  <sp>
    <lg type="couplet">
      <l>Since Fate has robb'd me of the hapless Youth,</l>
      <l>For whom my heart had hoarded up its truth;</l>
    </lg>
    <lg type="couplet">
      <l>By all the Laws of Love and Honour, now,</l>
      <l>I'm free again to chuse, &mdash; and one of you</l>
    </lg>
    <!-- ... -->
    <lg type="triplet">
      <l>Suppose I search the sober Gallery; &mdash; No,</l>
      <l>There's none but Prentices &mdash; &amp; Cuckolds all a row:</l>
      <l>And these, I doubt, are those that make 'em so.</l>
    </lg>
    <stage type="business">Pointing to the Boxes.</stage>
    <lg type="couplet">
      <l>'Tis very well, enjoy the jest:</l>
      <!-- ... -->
    </lg>
  </sp>
</epilogue>
```

*Module* Declared in file `teidram2`; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by `TEI.drama`

*Class* `dramafont`

*Data Description* Contains optional headings, a sequence of one or more component-level elements, and an optional sequence of closing material.

*May contain* `ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing`

*May occur within* `back front`

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT epilogue %om.RR; ((%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*,
                             (%Component;), (%m.Incl;)*)+,
                             (%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST epilogue
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* [10.1.2 Prologues and Epilogues](#); [10.1 Front and Back Matter](#)

**<equipment>** (equipment) provides technical details of the equipment and media used for an audio or video recording used as the source for a spoken text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from `declarable`

*Example*

```
<equipment>
  <p>"Hi-8" 8 mm NTSC camcorder with integral directional
    microphone and windshield and stereo digital sound
    recording channel.
  </p>
</equipment>
```

```

<equipment>
  <p>8-track analogue transfer mixed down to 19 cm/sec audio
  tape for cassette mastering
  </p>
</equipment>

```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* recording

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT equipment %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST equipment
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>

```

*See further* 5.2.9 Computer Files Composed of Transcribed Speech; 23.3.2 Declarable Elements

**<equiv>** specifies an equivalent or comparable element in some other markup language.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**scheme** names the markup language or encoding scheme

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any phrase identifying a markup language

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```

<equiv scheme="LaTeX">\para</equiv>

```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* If the other markup language uses the characters < or &, either these must be represented by entity references or the element content must be enclosed by a CDATA marked section.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add address att bibl biblFull biblStruct cb cit corr date dateRange del distinct emph expan foreign gap gi gloss hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs sic soCalled sp stage tag term time timeRange title unclear val

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT equiv %om.R0; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST equiv
  %a.global;
  scheme CDATA #REQUIRED>

```

*See further* 27.1 The TagDoc Documentation Element; 27.1.1 The AttList Documentation Element; 27.2 Element Classes; 27.3 Entity Documentation

**<eTree>** (embedding tree) provides an alternative to <tree> element for representing ordered rooted tree structures.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from chunk)

**label** gives a label for an embedding tree.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**value** provides the value of an embedding tree, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* A valid identifier of a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

### Example

```
<eTree n="ex1" label="PP">
  <eTree label="P">
    <eLeaf label="with"/>
  </eTree>
  <eTree label="NP">
    <eTree label="Art">
      <eLeaf label="the"/>
    </eTree>
    <eTree label="N">
      <eLeaf label="periscope"/>
    </eTree>
  </eTree>
</eTree>
```

**Module** Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

**Class** chunk

**Data Description** zero or more embedding trees, triangles, or embedding leaves.

**May contain** eLeaf eTree triangle

**May occur within** add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 eTree epigraph epilogue forest item metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic stage triangle view

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT eTree %om.RR; ((eTree | triangle | eLeaf )*)>
<!ATTLIST eTree
  %a.global;
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  value IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.3 *Another Tree Notation*

**<etym>** (etymology) encloses the etymological information in a dictionary entry.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel

### Example

```
<entry>
  <form><orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>ME. <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>, F. <mentioned>publier</mentioned>,
  L. <mentioned>publicare, publicatum</mentioned>.
  <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. 2d <ref>-ish</ref>.</xr>
</etym>
<!-- ... -->
</entry>
(From: Webster's Second International)
```

**Note** There is no consensus on the internal structure of etymologies, ore even on whether there is a standard internal structure. The <etym> tag accordingly simply contains prose, within which names of languages, cited words, glosses, and examples will typically be prominent. The tagging of such internal objects is optional.

**Module** Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

**Class** dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

**Data Description** May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption case castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct def del delSpan distinct eg emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap gen geogName gloss gram handShift hi index interp interpGrp itype join joinGrp label lang lb lbl link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone mood move name note num number oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb per persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tns tr trans unclear usg view w witDetail xptr xr xref

**May occur within** dictScrap eg entry entryFree hom re sense trans

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT etym %om.R0; ( #PCDATA | %m.phrase; | %m.inter; | usg | 1b1
```

```

| def | trans | tr | %m.morphInfo; | eg
| xr | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST etym
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>

```

See further 12.3.4 *Etymological Information*

**<event>** (Event) any phenomenon or occurrence, not necessarily vocalized or communicative, for example incidental noises or other events affecting communication.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.spoken, timed)

**who** supplies an identifier for the agent of the event described, if any. Its value is the identifier of a <participant> or <participant.grp> element in the TEI header.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a participant or participant group within the TEI Header

*Default* %INHERITED;

**iterated** (iterated) indicates whether or not the phenomenon is repeated.

*Datatype* ( y | n | u )

*Legal values are:*

y the phenomenon is repeated.

n the phenomenon is atomic.

u unknown or unmarked.

*Default* n

**desc** (description) supplies a conventional representation for the phenomenon.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a description or representation of the phenomenon chosen from a semi-closed list

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<event desc="ceiling collapses"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teispok2; Base tag set for Transcribed Speech: enabled by TEI.spoken

*Class* comp.spoken; timed

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set u

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT event %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST event
  %a.global;
  %a.timed;
  who IDREF %INHERITED;
  iterated ( y | n | u ) "n"
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

See further 11.2.7 *Formal Definition*; 11.2 *Elements Unique to Spoken Texts*; 11.2.3 *Vocal, Kinesic, Event*

**<exceptions>** documents ways in which a writing system declaration differs from the coded character sets, base writing system declarations, and entity sets which form its bases.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<writingSystemDeclaration
  name='--//TEI P2: 1993//WSD TLG Beta code//en'
  date='1993-06-01'>
<!-- ... -->

```

```

<characters>
  <baseWsd name='-//TEI P2: 1993//WSD ISO 646 IRV//en'
    authority='tei' />
  <exceptions>
    <character> <!-- ... --> </character>
    <character> <!-- ... --> </character>
    <!-- ... -->
  </exceptions>
</characters>
</writingSystemDeclaration>

```

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* Contains a series of <character> elements, each documenting one character unit of the writing system.

*May contain* character

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT exceptions %om.R0; (character*)>
<!ATTLIST exceptions
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 25.4.2 Exceptions in the WSD

**<exemplum>** contains a single example demonstrating the use of an element, together with optional paragraphs of commentary.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<exemplum>
  <p>The <gi>name</gi> element can be used for both
  personal names and place names:</p>
  <eg><![&nil;CDATA[
    <q>My dear <name type="person">Mr. Bennet</name>,</q>
    said his lady to him one day, <q>have you heard that
    <name type="place">Netherfield Park</name> is let
    at last?</q>]&nil;]></eg>
  <p>As shown above, the <att>type</att> attribute may be used
  to distinguish the one from the other.</p>
</exemplum>

```

Note that an explicit end-tag must be supplied for the paragraph immediately preceding the <eg> element within an <exemplum>, to prevent the <eg> from being mistaken for part of the paragraph.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*May contain* eg p

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT exemplum %om.RR; (p*, eg, p*)>
<!ATTLIST exemplum
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 27.1 The TagDoc Documentation Element

**<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data)

**abbr** (abbreviation) gives the abbreviation in its unexpanded form.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* The address is Southmoor <expan abbr="Rd">Road</expan>.

**resp** (responsibility) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for supplying the expansion of the abbreviation held as the content of the <expan> element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Example* The address is Southmoor <expan abbr='Rd' resp='LB'>Road</expan>.

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the expansion of the abbreviation.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**type** allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any useful classification name, e.g. 'suspension', 'contraction', 'brevigraph', 'title', 'organization', 'geographic', etc.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The type attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use.

*Note* This tag is the mirror image of the <abbr> tag; both allow the encoder to transcribe both an abbreviation and its expansion. In <abbr>, however, the original is transcribed as the content of the element and the expansion as an attribute value; <expan> reverses this. The choice between the two is up to the user. The <expan> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may expand abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If this is done, the TEI header should so indicate.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT expan %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST expan
  %a.globa1;
  abbr CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 6.4.5 Abbreviations and Their Expansions

**<extent>** describes the approximate size of the electronic text as stored on some carrier medium, specified in any convenient units.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

*Example*

```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* bibl biblFull fileDesc monogr

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT extent %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST extent
  %a.global;>
```

See further 5.2.3 Type and Extent of File; 5.2 The File Description; 6.10.2.3 Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details

**<extFigure>** (external figure) (in a writing system declaration) refers to a figure or illustration depicting the character form, which is stored in some declared notation external to the text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**notation** identifies the notation in which the figure is stored.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a valid name associated with a given notation by means of a NOTATION declaration in the document type definition.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**entity** gives the name of an external entity which contains the figure.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a valid name associated with the external entity by means of an ENTITY declaration in the document type declaration .

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example* An image of the character form may be stored and transmitted in any desired graphics format. The declaration of the notation may specify a local system identifier for the processor (here it is imagined that we use a program called “pddraw.exe” to process files in TIFF format), thus:

```
<!-- in the DTD: -->
<!NOTATION TIFF SYSTEM 'pddraw.exe'>
<!ENTITY lcthorn SYSTEM 'lcthorn.TIF' NDATA TIFF>
  <!-- in the WSD itself: -->
  <extFigure notation="TIFF" entity='lcthorn' />
```

More usually, a PUBLIC identifier is associated with the notation:

```
<!-- in the DTD: -->
<!NOTATION TIFF
  PUBLIC '-//XXX//NOTATION Tagged Image File Format//EN'>
<!ENTITY lcthorn SYSTEM 'lcthorn.TIF' NDATA TIFF>
  <!-- in the WSD itself: -->
  <extFigure notation=TIFF entity='lcthorn' />
```

Character shapes may be conveniently conveyed in forms other than graphics images; one might, for example, define a character shape using a font-design program such as Donald Knuth's MetaFont program (which can be used to generate fonts for processing with TeX):

```
<!-- in the DTD: -->
<!NOTATION metafont
      PUBLIC "-//DEK//NOTATION MetaFont//EN">
<!ENTITY lcthorn SYSTEM 'lcthorn.TIF' NDATA metafont>
<!-- in the WSD itself: -->
<extFigure notation='metafont' entity='lcthorn' />
```

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* Empty.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT extFigure %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST extFigure
      %a.global;
      notation CDATA #REQUIRED
      entity CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

*See further* 25.4.2 *Exceptions in the WSD*

**<f>** (Feature) associates a name with a value of any of several different types.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**name** provides a name for a feature.

*Datatype* NMTOKEN

*Values* A name token.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**org** indicates organization of given value or values as singleton, set, bag or list.

*Datatype* (single|set|bag|list)

*Legal values are:*

**single** indicates that the given value is a singleton.

**set** indicates that the given values are organized as a set.

**bag** indicates that the given values are organized as a bag (multiset).

**list** indicates that the given values are organized as a list.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If the org attribute value has the value **single**, and more than one value for the feature is given, then only the first value is used.

**rel** indicates the relation between the values that are given as the content of the feature or pointed at by the fVal attribute and the actual values of the feature.

*Datatype* (eq|ne|sb|ns)

*Legal values are:*

**eq** indicates that the given values are the actual values.

**ne** indicates that the given values are not the actual values.

**sb** indicates that the given values are a subset, subbag or sublist of the actual values.

**ns** indicates that the given values are not a subset, subbag or sublist of the actual values.

*Default* eq

*Note* When the org attribute value has the value **single**, then the values **sb** and **ns** are equivalent to the values **eq** and **ne** respectively.

**fVal** points to the id attributes of feature values.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* one or more valid identifiers, separated by white space.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* May be used instead of content.

*Example*

```
<f name="gender"><sym value="feminine"/></f>
```

*Note* If content is empty and no fVal attribute is present, then value is that specified by <default>.

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* Exactly one null value, or zero or more values other than null.

*May contain* alt any dft fs minus msr nbr none null plus rate str sym uncertain vAlt

*May occur within* fAlt fLib fs

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT f %om.R0; ( null | ( plus | minus | any | none | dft | uncertain |
                                sym | nbr | msr | rate | str | vAlt | alt | fs )* ) >

<!ATTLIST f
    %a.global;
    name NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
    org (single|set|bag|list) #IMPLIED
    rel (eq|ne|sb|ns) "eq"
    fVal IDREFS #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 16.2 *Elementary Feature Structures: Features with Binary Values*

**<factuality>** describes the extent to which the text may be regarded as imaginative or non-imaginative, that is, as describing a fictional or a non-fictional world.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** categorizes the factuality of the text.

*Datatype* (fiction|fact|mixed|inapplicable)

*Legal values are:*

**fiction** the text is to be regarded as entirely imaginative

**fact** the text is to be regarded as entirely informative or factual

**mixed** the text contains a mixture of fact and fiction

**inapplicable** the fiction/fact distinction is not regarded as helpful or appropriate to this text

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<factuality type="fiction"/>
```

```
<factuality type="mixed">contains a mixture of gossip and
speculation about real people and events</factuality>
```

*Note* For many literary texts, a simple binary opposition between “fiction” and “fact” is naïve in the extreme; this parameter is not intended for purposes of subtle literary analysis, but as a simple means of characterising the claimed fictiveness of a given text. No claim is made that works characterised as “fact” are in any sense “true”.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* textDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT factuality %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST factuality
    %a.global;
    type (fiction|fact|mixed|inapplicable) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<fAlt>** (Feature alternation) provides alternative features for a feature structure or other feature alternation.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**mutExcl** indicates whether values are mutually exclusive.

*Datatype* (Y|N)

*Legal values are:*

Y indicates that the values are mutually exclusive.

N indicates that the values are not mutually exclusive.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<fAlt mutExcl="Y">
  <f name="gender"><sym value="masculine"/></f>
  <f name="gender"><sym value="neuter"/></f>
</fAlt>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* Two or more features, feature structures or feature alternations.

*May contain* fAlt fs

*May occur within* fAlt fLib fs

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT fAlt %om.RR; ((f | fs | fAlt), (f | fs | fAlt)+)>
<!ATTLIST fAlt
  %a.global;
  mutExcl (Y|N) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 16.7 *Alternative Features and Feature Values*

**<fDecl>** (feature declaration) declares a single feature, specifying its name, organization, range of allowed values, and optionally its default value.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**name** indicates the name of the feature being declared; matches the name attribute of <f> elements in the text.

*Datatype* NMTOKEN

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #REQUIRED

**org** (organization) specifies the organizing discipline of the feature value.

*Datatype* (unit | set | bag | list)

*Legal values are:*

unit unitary atomic value

set set value (unordered, no duplicates)

bag bag value (unordered, may have duplicates)

list list value (ordered, may have duplicates)

*Default* unit

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* fDescr vDefault vRange

*May occur within* fsDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT fDecl %om.RR; (fDescr?, vRange, vDefault?)>
<!ATTLIST fDecl
  %a.global;
  name NMTOKEN #REQUIRED
  org (unit | set | bag | list) "unit">
```

See further 26 Feature System Declaration

**<fDesc>** (feature description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the feature being declared and its values.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add address bibl biblFull biblStruct cb cit corr date dateRange del distinct emph expan fLib foreign fs fsLib fvLib gap gloss hi index label lb list listBibl measure mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time timeRange title unclear

*May occur within* fDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT fDescr %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST fDescr
    %a.global;>
```

See further 26 Feature System Declaration

**<figDesc>** (Description of Figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Note* This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

*Module* Declared in file teifig2; Additional tag set for figures, tables and formulae: enabled by TEI.figures

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* figure

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT figDesc %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST figDesc
    %a.global;>
```

See further 22.3 Specific Elements for Graphic Images

**<figure>** (in a writing system declaration) contains an image of a character form, stored in-line in some declared notation.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**notation** identifies the notation in which the figure is encoded.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a valid name associated with a given notation by means of an NOTATION declaration in the document type definition.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```
<!-- ===== in the DTD ===== -->
<!NOTATION charcell
    PUBLIC "-//Anonymous//NOTATION
```

```

      8x14 character cell format//en' >
<!-- 'CHARCELL' is a simple-minded notation for transcribing -->
<!-- character images in the form used by the old IBM PC: -->
<!-- an eight-by-fourteen pixel character cell. Each pixel -->
<!-- is represented by a period (if off) or an X (if on). -->
<!-- Newlines are ignored, but for obvious reasons it's -->
<!-- convenient to have one after each line of pixels. -->
<!-- N.B. This 'notation' is given as an example; it is not -->
<!-- (repeat, NOT) recommended for serious use. -->
<!-- ===== in the WSD itself: ===== -->
<character class='lexical'>
<form entityStd='thorn' entityLoc='t'>
<desc>Latin lowercase letter thorn</desc>
<figure notation="charcell">
.....
.....
XXX....
.XX....
.XX....
.XXXX..
.XX..XX.
.XX..XX.
.XX..XX.
.XXXX..
.XX....
.XX....
XXXX...
.....
</figure>
</form>
</character>

```

*Note* Inline storage should be used only for extremely simple notations such as the one shown; generally, external storage of figures using an entity reference is recommended because less error prone.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain character data.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* ab add admin camera caption case cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap docEdition emph entryFree etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting mood note number orth otherForm p per pos pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePage titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT figure %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST figure
    %a.global;
    notation CDATA #REQUIRED>

```

*See further* 25.4.2 *Exceptions in the WSD*

**<figure>** indicates the location of a graphic, illustration, or figure.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from inter, tpParts)

**entity** names the external entity within which the graphic image of the figure is stored.

*Datatype* ENTITY

*Values* the name of an external unparsed entity declared elsewhere in the DTD.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* This attribute may be omitted if for some reason no electronic form of the image is provided.

*Example*

```

<figure entity="Fig1">

```

```

    <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
    <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four
    or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  </figure>

```

*Note* The end-tag must be supplied, even if the element has no content.

*Module* Declared in file teifig2; Additional tag set for figures, tables and formulae: enabled by TEI.figures

*Class* inter; tpParts

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib figDesc fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone p pb respons span spanGrp text timeline

*May occur within* ab add admin camera caption case cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap docEdition emph entryFree etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting mood note number orth otherForm p per pos pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePage titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT figure %om.RR; ((%m.Incl;)*,
                           (head, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
                           (p, (%m.Incl;)*)*,
                           (figDesc, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
                           (text, (%m.Incl;)*)? ) >

<!ATTLIST figure
  %a.global;
  entity ENTITY #IMPLIED>

```

*See further* 22 Tables, Formulae, and Graphics

**<fileDesc>** (File Description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Note* The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* editionStmnt extent notesStmnt publicationStmnt seriesStmnt sourceDesc titleStmnt

*May occur within* teiHeader

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT fileDesc %om.RR; (titleStmnt, editionStmnt?, extent?,
                             publicationStmnt, seriesStmnt?, notesStmnt?,
                             sourceDesc+ ) >

<!ATTLIST fileDesc
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 5.2 The File Description; 5.1.1 The TEI Header and Its Components

**<files>** specifies the name of the operating system file(s) within which this markup component is declared.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**names** supplies the names of one or more files.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a file identifier

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<files names="TEIDICT2"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* Empty element.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT files %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST files
  %a.global;
  names CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*

**<firstLang>** (First language) specifies the first language of a participant.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from demographic

*Example*

```
<firstLang>French</firstLang>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT firstLang %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST firstLang
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<fLib>** (Feature library) assembles library of feature elements.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata)

**type** indicates type of feature library (i.e., what kind of features it contains).

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Character string, e.g. *word features*.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<fLib type="agreement features">
  <f id="p1" name="person" fVal="sfirst"/>
  <f id="p2" name="person" fVal="ssecond"/>
  <!-- ... -->
  <f id="ns" name="number" fVal="ssing"/>
  <f id="np" name="number" fVal="splur"/>
  <!-- ... -->
</fLib>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* metadata

*Data Description* Zero or more features or alternations of features.

*May contain* fAlt

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang

langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT fLib %om.RR; ((f | fAlt)*)>
<!ATTLIST fLib
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 16.3 *Feature, Feature-Structure and Feature-Value Libraries*

**<foreign>** (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

*Example*

This is heathen Greek to you still?  
 Your <foreign lang="lat">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?

*Note* The global lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere its value should indicate a language code (associated with some writing system declaration) for the language in question; where applicable, the codes of ISO 639 may be used. It is strongly recommended that the lang attribute be consistently specified on all <foreign> elements. This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*Data Description* free prose

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT foreign %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST foreign
  %a.global;>
```

See further 6.3.2.1 *Foreign Words or Expressions*

**<foreName>** (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from personPart

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <roleName>Ex-President</roleName>
  <foreName>George</foreName>
  <surname>Bush</surname>
</persName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* personPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* persName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT foreName %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST foreName
  %a.global;
  %a.personPart;>
```

*See further* 20.1 *Personal Names*

**<forest>** provides for groups of rooted trees.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** identifies the type of the forest.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* One or more trees, embedding trees, or underspecified embedding trees (triangles).

*May contain* eTree tree triangle

*May occur within* forestGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT forest %om.RR; ((tree | eTree | triangle)+)>
<!ATTLIST forest
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.3 *Another Tree Notation*

**<forestGrp>** (Forest group) provides for groups of forests.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** identifies the type of the forest group.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<!--None provided. -->
```

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* One or more forests.

*May contain* forest

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT forestGrp %om.RR; ((forest)+)>
<!ATTLIST forestGrp
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.3 *Another Tree Notation*

**<form>** (form information group) groups all the information on the written and spoken forms of one headword.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel, formInfo)

**type** classifies form as simple, compound, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

simple single free lexical item  
lemma the headword itself  
variant a variant form  
compound word formed from simple lexical items  
derivative word derived from headword  
inflected word in other than usual dictionary form  
phrase multiple-word lexical item

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; formInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain any of a variety of element.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption case castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign form formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap gen geogName gloss gram handShift hi hyph index interp interpGrp itype join joinGrp label lang lb lbl link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone mood move name note number oRef oVar orgName orig orth pRef pVar pb per persName phr placeName pron ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied syll table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tns unclear usg view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree form hom re sense superEntry trans

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT form %om.RR; ( #PCDATA | %m.phrase; | %m.inter;
    | %m.formInfo; | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST form
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<form>** (letter form) identifies one letter form taken by a particular character in a writing system declaration.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**string** gives the byte string used to encode the letter form in the text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters (often a single byte)

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <form string="a/">  
<desc>lowercase Greek alpha with acute accent</desc>  
</form>

*Note* If the character is encoded only using entity references, then the value of string should be "" (the empty string).

In coded character sets which use character-set shifting (e.g. JIS 0208), the string attribute should typically contain the required shift characters, in order to render the value unambiguous. In such a case, there is no expectation that every occurrence of the character will be immediately preceded by the shift sequence; processing software is responsible for understanding the shift mechanism and acting accordingly.

The same string value may not appear on more than one <form> elements (except the empty string), unless each occurrence is associated with a different coded character set.

**codedCharSet** (coded character set) specifies which base coded character set the string value occurs in.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* a reference to the identifier of a <codedCharSet> element in the current writing system declaration.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If more than one <codedCharSet> is specified as a base component of the writing system declaration, then it is expected that character-set shifting is in use, as described in ISO 2022 or some equivalent. In this case, each <form> element which has a value for the string attribute should also identify, by means of the codedCharSet attribute, which identifies which coded character set actually contains the string in question. Proper shifting among character sets is the responsibility of the user.

**entityStd** (standard entity name) gives the name of one or more entities defined for this character form in some standard entity set(s).

*Datatype* ENTITIES

*Values* One or more valid SGML entity names declared in the document type definition of the WSD; the entity must also be included in an entity set mentioned in an <entitySet> declaration in the current writing system declaration or in some base writing system referred to by a <baseWsd> element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <form entityStd="thorn">  
     <desc>lowercase Old English or Icelandic thorn</desc>  
 </form>

*Note* If the same letter form is defined by more than one public entity set, more than one value may appear in this attribute.

The same entity name may not appear in the entityStd or entityLoc attributes of more than one <form> element.

**entityLoc** (local entity name) gives one or more entity names used locally for this character form.

*Datatype* ENTITIES

*Values* One or more valid SGML entity names declared in the document type definition of the WSD; the entity must also be included in an entity set mentioned in an <entitySet> declaration in the current writing system declaration or in some base writing system referred to by a <baseWsd> element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <form entityStd="thorn" entityLoc="t">  
     <desc>lowercase Old English or Icelandic thorn</desc>  
     <note>The standard entity name is <ident>thorn</ident>; the local  
     entity <ident>t</ident>  
     is used for brevity and legibility.</note>  
 </form>

*Note* The same entity name may not appear in the entityStd or entityLoc attributes of more than one <form> element.

**ucs-4** (universal-character-set code) gives the position of the character form in the thirty-two bit ‘universal character set’ defined by ISO 10646.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* one or more sets of two or four two-digit hexadecimal numbers giving a valid ISO 10646 code point for the character form; for legibility the two-digit hexadecimal numbers should be separated by hyphens. If more than one UCS-4 code is associated with a given character form, the two UCS-4 codes should be given separated by blanks. If the character form is associated with a sequence of UCS-4 codes (e.g. a base character followed by one or more non-spacing diacritics), then the components of the sequence should be separated by +.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The same UCS-4 code (or sequence) may not appear within more than one <character> element within the writing system declaration. It may however appear on several forms of the same character.

Multiple UCS-4 codes can be given for a single character; this allows sequences treated as distinct by ISO 10646 to be documented as referring to a single ‘character’ as defined by the WSD (e.g. “lowercase a-umlaut” and “lowercase a” plus “umlaut”).

If a single UCS-4 code is to be treated as relating to two distinct ‘characters’ as defined by the WSD (e.g. to reverse the effects of Han unification on some character), then one of the <character> elements should be associated with the UCS-4 code in the normal way, and the others should call attention to the relevant UCS-4 code by a comment in a <note> element.

*Note* The <form> element documents one form of a character; in most cases, there will be only one. If more than one form is given, in general, they are to be regarded as free variants of the character unless otherwise specified in the notes. The distinction between <character> and <form> makes it possible to distinguish, in an encoding, among different letter forms (which may have historical, aesthetic, linguistic, or other significance) without having to claim that the different forms constitute different ‘characters’ in any normal sense. (Using the technical terms occasionally encountered, the <form> element can be used to record each *allograph* of a given character or *grapheme*.) The concepts of ‘character’ and ‘letter form’, however, vary from analyst to analyst; the decision to treat a given set of forms as a single character or as a set of characters is not always obvious, and may require the application of considerable learning and judgement. The <note> element should be used to record the reasoning behind any particularly difficult decision.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain a series of description element, optionally one or more figure elements showing the character form in question, and optionally a series of notes.

*May contain* desc extFigure figure note

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree form hom re sense superEntry trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT form %om.R0; (desc+, (figure | extFigure)*, note*)>
<!ATTLIST form
  %a.global;
  string CDATA #IMPLIED
  codedCharSet IDREF #IMPLIED
  entityStd ENTITIES #IMPLIED
  entityLoc ENTITIES #IMPLIED
  ucs-4 CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 25.4.2 *Exceptions in the WSD*

**<formula>** contains a mathematical or other formula.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from phrase)

**notation** supplies the name of a previously defined notation used for the content of the element.

*Datatype* %formulaNotations;

*Values* The name of a formal notation previously declared in the document type declaration.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Module* Declared in file teifig2; Additional tag set for figures, tables and formulae: enabled by TEI.figures

*Class* phrase

*Data Description* The content model for this element is specified by the parameter entity *formula-Content*, the default value of which is #PCDATA.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker  
sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr  
trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT formula %om.RR; %formulaContent;>
<!ATTLIST formula
    %a.gloBal;
    notation %formulaNotations; #REQUIRED>
```

*See further* 22.2 *Formulae and Mathematical Expressions*

**<front>** (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring

*Example*

```
<front>
  <div lang="LA" type="epigraph">
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
      <q lang="GRC">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat
      illa: <q lang="GRC">apowanein welo.</q></quote></div>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q lang="IT">il miglior fabbro.</q></p></div>
</front>

<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
```

```

she has done so inadvertently.
...</p>
</div>
</front>

```

**Module** Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** declaring

**May contain** addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument byline castList cb certainty delSpan div div1 divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph epilogue fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb performance prologue respons set span spanGrp timeline titlePage titlePart

**May occur within** text

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT front %om.R0; ( (%m.front; | %m.Incl;)*,
                          (( (%m.fmchunk;), (%m.fmchunk; | titlePage | %m.Incl;)* )
                           | ( div, (div | %m.front; | %m.Incl;)* )
                           | ( div1, (div1 | %m.front; | %m.Incl; )*) )? ) >
<!ATTLIST front
  %a.global;
  %a.declaring;>

```

See further 7.5 Title Pages; 7 Default Text Structure

**<fs>** (Feature structure) analyzes a collection of features and feature alternations as a structural unit.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from complexVal, metadata)

**type** provides a type for a feature structure.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Character string, e.g. *word structure*.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**feats** pointer to features.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* list of individual IDs for features.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* May be used instead of having features as content.

**rel** indicates the relation of the given content to the actual content or value of the feature structure.

*Datatype* (eq|ne|sb|ns)

*Legal values are:*

**eq** indicates that the actual content is that given.

**ne** indicates that the actual content is not that given.

**sb** indicates that the actual content is subsumed by the given content.

**ns** indicates that the actual content is not subsumed by the given content.

*Default* sb

*Note* The <fs> element is the only one for which the default rel attribute value is sb.

For all others, it is eq.

**Example**

```

<fs type="agreement structure" rel="ns">
  <f name="person"><sym value="third"/></f>
  <f name="number"><sym value="singular"/></f>
</fs>

```

**Module** Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

**Class** complexVal; metadata

**Data Description** Zero or more features or (feature) alternations.

**May contain** alt f fAlt

**May occur within** ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline

def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent f fAlt factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front fsLib funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg vAlt view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT fs %om.RR; ((f | fAlt | alt)*)>
<!ATTLIST fs
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  feats IDREFS #IMPLIED
  re1 (eq|ne|sb|ns) "sb">
```

See further 16.2 Elementary Feature Structures: Features with Binary Values

**<fsConstraints>** (feature-structure constraints) specifies constraints on the content of well formed feature structures.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain a series of conditional or biconditional elements.

*May contain* bicond cond

*May occur within* fsDecl

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT fsConstraints %om.RR; (cond | bicond)*>
<!ATTLIST fsConstraints
  %a.global;>
```

See further 26 Feature System Declaration

**<fsdDecl>** (FSD (feature-system declaration) declaration) identifies the feature system declaration which contains definitions for a particular type of feature structure.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** identifies the type of feature structure documented in the FSD; this will be the value of the type attribute on at least one feature structure.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* If better validation is required, the global id attribute may be used to specify the type instead of this attribute; in such a case, the name must be a valid identifier.

**fsd** (feature-system declaration) specifies the external entity containing the feature system declaration; an entity declaration in the document's DTD subset must associate the entity name with a file on the system.

*Datatype* ENTITY

*Values* a valid external entity name

*Default* #REQUIRED

### Example

```
<encodingDesc><!-- ... -->
```

```

    <fsdDecl type="GPSG" fsd="fsdGazdar"/>
    <fsdDecl type="entry" fsd="fsdLexicon"/>
    <fsdDecl type="subentry" fsd="fsdLexicon"/><!-- ... -->
</encodingDesc>

```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT fsdDecl %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST fsdDecl
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #REQUIRED
    fsd ENTITY #REQUIRED>

```

*See further* 5.3.7 *The Feature System Declaration*; 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<fsDecl>** (feature structure declaration) declares one type of feature structure.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** gives a name for the type of feature structure being declared.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any convenient string of characters.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**baseType** gives the name of the feature structure type from which this type inherits features and constraints; if this type declares a feature with the same name as a feature of the base type, the definition within this <fsDecl> overrides the inherited definition. The <fsConstraints> are inherited only if this <fsDecl> does not specify any; otherwise the constraints in this <fsDecl> override. When no baseType is specified, no features or constraints are inherited.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any convenient string for use as a name.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* Contains a series of feature declarations, together with (optionally) a description, and a set of feature structure constraints.

*May contain* fDecl fsConstraints fsDescr

*May occur within* teiFsd2

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT fsDecl %om.RR; (fsDescr?, fDecl+, fsConstraints?)>
<!ATTLIST fsDecl
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #REQUIRED
    baseType CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

*See further* 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<fsDescr>** (feature system description (in FSD)) describes in prose what is represented by the type of feature structure declared in the enclosing <fsDecl>.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain character data, phrase-level elements, and inter-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add address bibl biblFull biblStruct cb cit corr date dateRange del distinct emph expan fLib foreign fs fsLib fvLib gap gloss hi index label lb list listBibl measure mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs sic soCalled stage term time timeRange title unclear

*May occur within* fsDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT fsDescr %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST fsDescr
    %a.global;>
```

See further 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<fsLib>** (Feature-structure library) assembles library of feature structure elements.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata)

**type** indicates type of feature-structure library (i.e., what type of feature structures it contains).

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Character string, e.g. *word structure library*.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<fsLib type="agreement structure library">
  <fs id="p1ns" type="agreement structure" feats="p1 ns"/>
  <fs id="p1np" type="agreement structure" feats="p1 np"/>
  <!-- ... -->
</fsLib>
```

*Note* If a <vAlt> member of an <fsLib> tag does not consist of <fs> tags, the result is a semantic error.

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* metadata

*Data Description* Zero or more feature structures or alternations of feature structures expressed as <vAlt> elements.

*May contain* fs vAlt

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT fsLib %om.RR; ((fs | vAlt)*)>
<!ATTLIST fsLib
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 16.3 *Feature, Feature-Structure and Feature-Value Libraries*

**<funder>** (Funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent
federal agency</funder>
```

<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European Communities</funder>  
 <funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>  
 <funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</funder>

*Note* Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors*, who provide intellectual support and authority.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* Any string of characters.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* titleStm

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT funder %om.R0; %phrase.seq; >
<!ATTLIST funder
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.2.1 *The Title Statement*

**<fvLib>** (Feature-value library) assembles library of feature value elements.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata)

**type** indicates type of feature-value library (i.e., what type of feature values it contains).

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Character string, e.g. *symbolic values*.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<fvLib type="symbolic values">
  <sym id="sfirst" value="first"/>
  <sym id="ssecond" value="second"/>
  <!-- ... -->
  <sym id="ssing" value="singular"/>
  <sym id="splur" value="plural"/>
  <!-- ... -->
</fvLib>
```

*Note* Content defined as ((%bVal;)? & (%cVal; | ptr | join)\*) in FS3.dtd. If a <vAlt> member of an <fvLib> tag contains <fs> tags, the result is a semantic error.

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* metadata

*Data Description* At most one of each of the *unique* feature values; and zero or more *nonunique* feature values, except feature structures (which should be placed in feature-structure libraries).

*May contain* any dft minus msr nbr none null plus rate str sym uncertain vAlt

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStm publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStm restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled soccStatus sound sp speaker

sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange  
timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT fvLib %om.RR; ((plus | minus | any | none | dft | uncertain | null
| sym | nbr | msr | rate | str | vAlt)*)>
<!ATTLIST fvLib
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 16.3 *Feature, Feature-Structure and Feature-Value Libraries*

**<fw>** (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a ‘header’, ‘footer’), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from phrase)

**type** classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

header a running title at the top of the page  
 footer a running title at the bottom of the page  
 pag a page number or foliation symbol  
 sig a signature or gathering symbol  
 catch a catch-word

*Default* #IMPLIED

**place** indicates where on the page this material appears.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

top top of the page.  
 bot bottom of the page.  
 left in left margin.  
 right in right margin.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<fw type="sig" place="bot">C3</fw>
```

*Note* Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the *rend* attribute. The **<fw>** element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads, are of paramount importance.

*Module* Declared in file *teitran2*; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr

*Class* phrase

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date  
 dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss  
 handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef  
 oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span  
 spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
 byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
 damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
 docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
 foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
 item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
 num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
 placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence

resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT fw %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST fw
  %a.globa1;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  place CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 18.3 Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter

**<gap>** (omitted material) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible or inaudible.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from editIncl)

**desc** (description) gives a description of the omitted text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a prose description of the material omitted.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**reason** gives the reason for omission. Sample values include ‘sampling’, ‘illegible’, ‘inaudible’, ‘irrelevant’, ‘cancelled’, ‘cancelled and illegible’.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any short indication of the reason for the omission.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsibility) indicates the editor, transcriber or encoder responsible for the decision not to provide any transcription of the text and hence the application of the <gap> tag.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text’s creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**hand** in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, signifies the hand which made the deletion.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**agent** In the case of text omitted from the transcription because of damage or other phenomenon resulting from an identifiable cause, signifies the causative agent.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any prose description of the agency of damage.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**extent** indicates approximately how much text has been omitted from the transcription, in letters, minims, inches, or any appropriate unit, either because of editorial policy or because a deletion, damage, or other cause has rendered transcription impossible.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* It is possible, but not always necessary, to provide measurements precise to the millimeter or even to the printer’s point. The degree of precision attempted will vary with the purpose of the encoding and the nature of the material.

*Note* The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 18.2.4 *Use of the Gap, Del, Damage, Unclear and Supplied Tags in Combination* for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* editIncl

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT gap %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST gap
  %a.global;
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED
  reason CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;
  agent CDATA #IMPLIED
  extent CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.5.3 *Additions, Deletions, and Omissions*

**<gen>** (gender) identifies the morphological gender of a lexical item, as given in the dictionary.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, morphInfo

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type="gender">.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionaries

*Class* dictionaryParts; morphInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be 'm', 'f', 'n' etc.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xpTr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT gen %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST gen
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<genName>** contains a name component used to indicating generational information, such as “Junior”, or a number used in a monarch’s name.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from personPart

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <foreName>Charles</foreName>
  <genName>II</genName>
</persName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* personPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* persName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT genName %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST genName
  %a.global;
  %a.personPart;>
```

*See further* 20.1 Personal Names

**<geog>** (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as “valley”, “mount” etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from names, placePart, typed

*Example*

```
<geogName> The <geog>vale</geog>
of White Horse</geogName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* placePart; names; typed

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* geogName placeName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT geog %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST geog
  %a.global;
  %a.names;
  %a.typed;>
```

*See further* 20.2 Place Names

**<geogName>** (geographical name) a name associated with some geographical feature such as “Windrush Valley” or “Mount Sinai”.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, names)

**type** provides more culture- linguistic- or application- specific information used to categorize this name component.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* one of a set of codes defined for the application.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<geogName>
  <geog>Mount</geog>
  <name>Sinai</name>
</geogName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates  
*Class* data; names

*May contain* #PCDATA addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap geog index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone name pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT geogName %om.RR; (#PCDATA | geog | name | %m.Incl; )*>
<!ATTLIST geogName
    %a.global;
    %a.names;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 20.2 Place Names

**<gi>** (generic identifier) contains the name (generic identifier) of an element.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from sgmlKeywords)

**tei** indicates whether this element is part of the TEI encoding scheme (i.e. defined in a TEI DTD fragment) or not.

*Datatype* (yes|no)

*Legal values are:*

yes this element is part of the TEI scheme.

no this element is not part of the TEI scheme.

*Default* yes

*Example*

An `<gi tei="no">LI</gi>` element is roughly analagous to an `<gi>item</gi>` element.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Class* sgmlKeywords

*Data Description* TEI naming rules require lower case letters for all generic identifiers, except for names derived from multi-word phrases, in which case all but the first word is capitalized.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT gi %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST gi
    %a.global;
    tei (yes|no) "yes">
```

*See further* 27 Tag Set Documentation; 27.1 The TagDoc Documentation Element

**<gloss>** identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from hqphrase)

**target** identifies the associated term element

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be a valid identifier for some <term> element in the current document

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

We may define <term id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*Data Description* free prose

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itemType l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT gloss %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST gloss
    %a.global;
    target IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.3.4 *Terms, Glosses, and Cited Words*

**<gram>** (grammatical information) within an entry in a dictionary or a terminological data file, contains grammatical information relating to a term, word, or form.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, morphInfo)

**type** classifies the grammatical information given according to some convenient typology — in the case of terminological information, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

**pos** part of speech (any of the word classes to which a word may be assigned in a given language, based on form, meaning, or a combination of features, e.g. noun, verb, adjective, etc.)

**gen** gender (formal classification by which nouns and pronouns, and often accompanying modifiers, are grouped and inflected, or changed in form, so as to control certain syntactic relationships)

**num** number (e.g. singular, plural, dual, ...)

**animate** animate or inanimate

**proper** proper noun or common noun

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* A much fuller list of values for the type attribute may be generated from the dictionary of data element types under preparation as ISO TC 37/SC 3/WD 12 620, Computational Aids in Terminology. See ISO 12 620 for fuller details.

*Note* In terminological data, the <gram> element usually refers to the most recently specified <term> or <otherForm> element. In flat term entries, the group and depend attributes may be used to indicate exceptions to this general rule. In dictionaries, the element typically relates to the form or forms with which it is grouped in a <form> or other grouping element.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Declared in file teite2n; Declared in file teite2f; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology

*Class* morphInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* etym form gramGrp ofig tig

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT gram %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST gram
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 13.4.2 DTD Fragment for Flat Style; 13.2 Tags for Terminological Data; 12.3.2 Grammatical Information

**<gramGrp>** (grammatical information group) groups morpho-syntactic information about a lexical item, e.g. <pos>, <gen>, <number>, <case>, or <i type> (inflectional class).

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel, gramInfo

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; gramInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption case castList cb certainty cit cl colloc corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap gen geogName gloss gram gramGrp handShift hi index interp interpGrp itype join joinGrp label lang lb lbl link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone mood move name note num number oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb per persName phr placeName pos ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage subc supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tns unclear usg view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree gramGrp hom re sense trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT gramGrp %om.RR; (#PCDATA | %m.phrase; | %m.inter; | %m.gramInfo;
| %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST gramGrp
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.2 Grammatical Information

**<graph>** encodes a graph, which is a collection of nodes, and arcs which connect the nodes.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from chunk)

**type** describes the type of graph.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

undirected undirected graph

directed directed graph

transition network a directed graph with distinguished initial and final nodes

transducer a transition network with up to two labels on each arc

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If type=undirected, then the distinction between the to and from attributes of the <arc> tag is neutralized. Also, the adj attribute, rather than the adjFrom and adjTo attributes, should be used to encode pointers to the ends of the arcs. If type=directed (or any other value which implies directionality), then the adjFrom and adjTo attributes should be used, instead of the adj attribute.

**label** gives a label for a graph.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**order** states the order of the graph, i.e., the number of its nodes.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A positive integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**size** states the size of the graph, i.e., the number of its arcs.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A non-negative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<graph id="cug1"
  rend="LABEL-PLACE bottom center NODE-FRAME none ARC solid line"
  type="undirected" label="Airline Connections in Southwestern USA"
  order="5" size="4">
  <node id="lax" label="LAX" degree="2"/>
  <node id="lvg" label="LVG" degree="2"/>
  <node id="phx" label="PHX" degree="3"/>
  <node id="tus" label="TUS" degree="1"/>
  <node id="cib" label="CIB" degree="0"/>
  <arc from="lax" to="lvg"/>
  <arc from="lax" to="phx"/>
  <arc from="lvg" to="phx"/>
  <arc from="phx" to="tus"/>
</graph>
```

```
<graph id="rdg2"
  rend="LABEL-PLACE bottom center NODE-FRAME none ARC solid line with arrowhead"
  type="directed" label="Selected Airline Routes in Southwestern USA"
  order="5" size="5">
  <node id="lax" label="LAX" adjTo="lvg" adjFrom="phx" inDegree="1" outDegree="1"/>
  <node id="lvg" label="LVG" adjTo="phx" adjFrom="lax" inDegree="1" outDegree="1"/>
  <node id="phx" label="PHX" adjTo="lax tus" adjFrom="lvg tus" inDegree="2" outDegree="2"/>
  <node id="tus" label="TUS" adjTo="phx" adjFrom="phx" inDegree="1" outDegree="1"/>
  <node id="cib" label="CIB" inDegree="0" outDegree="0"/>
</graph>
```

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Class* chunk

*Data Description* One or more nodes and zero or more arcs in any order.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor arc cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone node pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue item metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic stage view

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT graph %om.RR; ( ( ( node, (%m.Incl;)* )+, ( arc, (%m.Incl;)* )*)
| ( ( arc, (%m.Incl;)* )+, ( node, (%m.Incl;)* )+)) >
<!ATTLIST graph
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  order CDATA #IMPLIED
  size CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.1 *Graphs and Digraphs*

**<group>** contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declaring

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument byline cb certainty closer dateline delSpan docAuthor docDate epigraph fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap group head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone opener pb respons salute signed span spanGrp text timeline trailer

*May occur within* group text

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT group %om.R0; ((%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*, ((text | group),
(text|group|%m.Incl;)*), (%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST group
  %a.global;
  %a.declaring;>
```

*See further* 7 *Default Text Structure*; 7.3 *Groups of Texts*; 23.1 *Varieties of Composite Text*

**<hand>** used in the header to define each distinct scribe or handwriting style.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**hand** identifier, either numeric or alphanumeric, used thereafter in the document to refer to this scribe or handwriting style (deprecated: use id).

*Datatype* ID

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* This attribute is retained only for compatibility with P3 and will be withdrawn at the next release. Its use is deprecated; the id attribute should be used to supply a unique identifier for the hand; the n attribute may be used to supply an alternative (and possibly non-unique) name.

**scribe** gives the name of, or other identifier for, the scribe.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any name, such as ‘tremulous hand’, ‘Hand B’, ‘Hoccleve, used to identify a scribe’

*Default* #IMPLIED

**style** indicates recognized writing styles.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any descriptive name such as ‘secretary’, ‘copperplate’, ‘Chancery’, ‘Italian’, etc.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**mainLang** (main language) indicates dominant language of hand.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* 'Latin', 'English'  
*Default* #IMPLIED

**ink** describes tint or type of ink, e.g. 'brown'. May also be used to indicate the writing medium, e.g. 'pencil',

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Default* #IMPLIED

**character** describes other characteristics of the hand, particularly those related to the quality of the writing.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* 'shaky', 'thick', 'regular'  
*Default* #IMPLIED

**first** indicates whether or not this is the first or main scribe of the document.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* 'YES', 'NO'  
*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsible) indicates the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the hand.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Note* The global id attribute is required on this element, and supplies an identifier, either numeric or alphanumeric, used thereafter in the document to refer to this scribe or handwriting style. The <hand> element is used in the header to define each unique hand, including unique scribes, distinguished by the encoder in the document. One such element must appear within the header for each hand distinguished in the text. Each location where a change of hands occurs is marked in the text by the <handShift> milestone element.

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* handList

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT hand %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST hand
  %a.global;
  hand ID #IMPLIED
  scribe CDATA #IMPLIED
  style CDATA #IMPLIED
  mainLang CDATA #IMPLIED
  ink CDATA #IMPLIED
  character CDATA #IMPLIED
  first CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA %INHERITED;>
```

*See further* 18.2.1 *Document Hands*

**<handList>** contains a series of <hand> elements listing the different hands of the source.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr

*Data Description* Contains a series of <hand> elements.

*May contain* hand

*May occur within* profileDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT handList %om.R0; (hand*)>
<!ATTLIST handList
  %a.global;>
```

See further 18.2.1 Document Hands

**<handShift>** marks the beginning of a sequence of text written in a new hand, or of a change in the scribe, writing style, ink or character of the document hand.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from phrase)

**new** identifies the new hand.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 Document Hands).

*Default* #IMPLIED

**old** identifies the old hand.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 Document Hands).

*Default* #IMPLIED

**style** indicates recognized writing styles.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any descriptive name such as 'secretary', 'copperplate', 'Chancery', 'Italian', etc.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**ink** describes tint or type of ink, e.g. 'brown'. May also be used to indicate the writing medium, e.g. 'pencil',

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**character** describes other characteristics of the hand, particularly those related to the quality of the writing.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* 'shaky', 'thick', 'regular'

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsible) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the change of hand.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Note* The <handShift> element may be used either to denote a shift in the document hand (as from one scribe to another, on one writing style to another). Or, it may indicate a shift within a document hand, as a change of writing style, character or ink

*Module* Declared in file teiTRAN2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr

*Class* phrase

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker

sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT handShift %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST handShift
  %a.global;
  new IDREF #IMPLIED
  old IDREF #IMPLIED
  style CDATA #IMPLIED
  ink CDATA #IMPLIED
  character CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;>
```

See further 18.2.1 Document Hands

**<head>** (heading) contains any heading, for example, the title of a section, or the heading of a list or glossary.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from divtop, fmchunk)

**type** categorizes the heading in some way meaningful to the encoder.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A set of user-defined keywords may be employed. Their significance should be documented in the header.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
<head>In the name of Christ here begins
the first book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius
Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
<list><head>Chapter-Headings</head>
<!-- list of chapter heads omitted ... -->
</list>
<div2 type="section">
<head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the
history.</head>
<p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
<p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin
four hundred and twelve years passed.</p>
<trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand,
five hundred and ninety-six years from the beginning of the
world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
</div2>
</div1>
```

The <head> tag is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition, argument.

```
<list type="simple">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
  <item> <!-- ... -->
</item>
</list>
```

*Note* The <head> tag is used for headings at all levels; processing programs which treat (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divtop; fmchunk

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xprf

*May occur within* argument back body castGroup castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue figure front group lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl performance prologue set table

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT head %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST head
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.7 Lists; 7.2 Elements Common to All Divisions

**<headItem>** (heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression.

```
<list type="gloss">
  <headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>
  <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
  <label>at loose ends</label>
  <item>disorganized</item>
  <label>on speaking terms</label>
  <item>friendly</item>
  <label>fair and square</label>
  <item>completely honest</item>
  <label>at death's door</label>
  <item>near death</item>
</list>
```

*Note* The <headItem> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xprf xref

*May occur within* list

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT headItem %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST headItem
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.7 Lists

**<headLabel>** (heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression.

```
<list type="gloss">
  <headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>
  <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
  <label>at loose ends</label>
  <item>disorganized</item>
  <label>on speaking terms</label>
  <item>friendly</item>
  <label>fair and square</label>
  <item>completely honest</item>
  <label>at death's door</label>
  <item>near death</item>
</list>
```

*Note* The **<headLabel>** element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a **<label>**.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

*May occur within* list

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT headLabel %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST headLabel
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.7 Lists

**<hi>** (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

*Example*

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*Data Description* free prose

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptra xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction

item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT hi %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST hi
    %a.global;>
```

See further 6.3.2.2 *Emphatic Words and Phrases*; 6.3.2 *Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language*

**<hom>** (homograph) groups information relating to one homograph within an <entry>.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

*May contain* def dictScrap eg etym form gramGrp note re sense trans usg xr

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT hom %om.RO; ( sense | %m.dictionaryTopLevel; )* >
<!ATTLIST hom
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;>
```

See further 12.2 *The Structure of Dictionary Entries*

**<hour>** (hour) the hour component of a temporal expression

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

*Example*

```
At the third stroke the time sponsored by Accurist
will be
<timeStruct value='18:21:30'>
  <hour>six</hour>
  <minute>twenty-one</minute> and
  <second>thirty</second> seconds
</timeStruct>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT hour %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST hour
    %a.global;
    %a.temporalExpr;>
```

See further 20.4 *Dates and Time*

**<hyph>** (hyphenation) contains a hyphenated form of a dictionary headword, or hyphenation information in some other form.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, formInfo

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; formInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree form trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT hyph %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST hyph
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<hyphenation>** (Hyphenation) summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from declarable)

**eol** indicates whether or not end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in a text.

*Datatype* ( all | some | none )

*Legal values are:*

**all** all end-of-line hyphenation has been retained, even though the lineation of the original may not have been.

**some** end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in some cases.

**hard** all soft end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining end-of-line hyphenation should be retained.

**none** all end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining hyphenation occurred within the line.

*Default* some

*Example*

```
<hyphenation eol="some">
  <p>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</p>
</hyphenation>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*Data Description* prose

*May contain* p

*May occur within* editorialDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT hyphenation %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST hyphenation
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;
  eol ( all | some | none ) "some">
```

*See further* 5.3.3 *The Editorial Practices Declaration*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<idno>** (identifying number) supplies any standard or non-standard number used to identify a bibliographic item.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from biblPart)

**type** categorizes the number, for example as an ISBN or other standard series.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A name or abbreviation indicating what type of identifying number is given (e.g. ISBN, LCCN).

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="OTA">116</idno>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* bibl biblStruct publicationStmnt seriesStmnt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT idno %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST idno
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 5.2.4 *Publication, Distribution, etc.*; 5.2.5 *The Series Statement*; 6.10.2.3 *Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details*

**<if>** defines a conditional default value for a feature; the condition is specified as a feature structure, and is met if it *subsumes* the feature structure in the text for which a default value is sought.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain a feature structure, followed by a feature value; the two are separated by a <then> element.

*May contain* any dft f fAlt fs minus msr nbr none null plus rate str sym then uncertain vAlt

*May occur within* vDefault

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT if %om.RR; ((fs | f | fAlt), then, (%m.featureVal;)) >
<!ATTLIST if
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<iff>** separates the condition from the consequence in a <bicond> element.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Note* This element is provided primarily to enhance the human readability of the feature-system declaration.

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* bicond

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT iff %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST iff
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<ihs>** (independent header set) contains a set of TEI Headers exchanged independently of their associated text or group elements.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<ihs>
<teiHeader> ... </teiHeader>
<teiHeader> ... </teiHeader>
```

```

<teiHeader> ... </teiHeader>
<!-- ... -->
</ihs>

```

*Module* Declared in file teishd2; Auxiliary DTD for Independent Headers

*Data Description* Contains an arbitrary sequence of <teiHeader> elements only.

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT ihs %om.R0; (teiHeader+)>
<!ATTLIST ihs
    %a.global;>

```

See further 24.8 Structure of the DTD for Independent Headers

**<imprimatur>** contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from tpParts

*Example*

```

<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>

```

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* tpParts

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* titlePage

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT imprimatur %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST imprimatur
    %a.global;>

```

See further 7.5 Title Pages

**<imprint>** groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

*Example*

```

<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>

```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor biblScope cb certainty date delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb pubPlace publisher respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* bibl monogr

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT imprint %om.R0;
    (pubPlace | publisher | date | biblScope | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST imprint
    %a.global;>

```

See further 6.10.2.3 Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details

**<index>** (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata)

- index** (index number) indicates which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* any string of characters; valid values are application-dependent.  
*Default* #IMPLIED  
*Note* This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indices for a text.
- level1** (first-level index entry) gives the form under which the index entry is to be made.  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* any string of characters.  
*Default* #REQUIRED  
*Note* At least one level of entry is required.
- level2** (second-level index entry) gives the second-level form, if any.  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* any string of characters.  
*Default* #IMPLIED
- level3** (third-level index entry) gives the third-level form, if any.  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* any string of characters.  
*Default* #IMPLIED
- level4** (fourth-level index entry) gives the fourth-level form, if any.  
*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* any string of characters.  
*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index level1="Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya" level2="cousin and backer of David b. Daniel"/>
b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura,
<index level1="Azarya" level2="gaon of Sura"/>
<index level1="Sura"/> was David's own first cousin.
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* metadata

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT index %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST index
  %a.global;
  index CDATA #IMPLIED
  level1 CDATA #REQUIRED
  level2 CDATA #IMPLIED
  level3 CDATA #IMPLIED
  level4 CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.8.2 *Index Entries*

**<iNode>** (intermediate (or internal) node) represents an intermediate (or internal) node of a tree.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**label** gives a label for an intermediate node.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**value** provides the value of an intermediate node, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* A valid identifier of a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**children** provides a list of identifiers of the elements which are the children of the intermediate node.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* A list of identifiers.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**parent** provides the identifier of the element which is the parent of this node.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of the parent node.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**ord** indicates whether or not the internal node is ordered.

*Datatype* (Y | N)

*Legal values are:*

Y indicates that the children of the intermediate node are ordered.

N indicates that the children of the intermediate node are unordered.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Use if and only if ord=partial is specified on the <tree> tag and the intermediate node has more than one child.

**follow** provides an identifier of the element which this node follows.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of another intermediate node or leaf of the tree.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If the tree is unordered or partially ordered, this attribute has the property of fixing the relative order of the intermediate node and the element which is the value of the attribute.

**outDegree** gives the out degree of an intermediate node, the number of its children.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A nonnegative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The in degree of an intermediate node is always 1.

*Example*

```
<iNode id="pt1" label="PT" children="up1" parent="vb1" follow="pn1" outDegree="1"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* tree

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT iNode %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST iNode
  %a.global;
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  value IDREF #IMPLIED
  children IDREFS #REQUIRED
```

```
parent IDREF #IMPLIED
ord (Y | N) #IMPLIED
follow IDREF #IMPLIED
outDegree CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 21.2 Trees

**<interaction>** describes the extent, cardinality and nature of any interaction among those producing and experiencing the text, for example in the form of response or interjection, commentary etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** specifies whether or not there is any interaction between active and passive participants in the text.

*Datatype* (none|partial|complete|inapplicable)

*Legal values are:*

none no interaction of any kind, e.g. a monologue

partial some degree of interaction, e.g. a monologue with set responses

complete complete interaction, e.g. a face to face conversation

inapplicable this parameter is inappropriate or inapplicable in this case

*Default* #IMPLIED

**active** specifies the number of active participants (or *addressors*) producing parts of the text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

singular a single addressor

plural many addressors

corporate a corporate addressor

unknown number of addressors unknown or unspecifiable

*Default* #IMPLIED

**passive** specifies the number of passive participants (or *addressees*) to whom a text is directed or in whose presence it is created or performed.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

self text is addressed to the originator e.g. a diary

single text is addressed to one other person e.g. a personal letter

many text is addressed to a countable number of others e.g. a conversation in which all participants are identified

group text is addressed to an undefined but fixed number of participants e.g. a lecture

world text is addressed to an undefined and indeterminately large number e.g. a published book

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<!-- An informal conversation: -->
<interaction type="complete" active="plural" passive="many"/>
```

```
<!-- A formal lecture: -->
<interaction type="none" active="singular" passive="group"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

May occur within textDesc

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT interaction %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST interaction
  %a.global;
  type (none|partial|complete|inapplicable) #IMPLIED
  active CDATA #IMPLIED
  passive CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 23.2.1 The Text Description

**<interp>** (interpretation) provides for an interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from interpret, metadata)

**value** identifies the specific phenomenon being annotated.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**Example**

```
<interp resp="TMA" type="structural unit" value="aftermath"/>
```

**Module** Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

**Class** metadata; interpret

**Data Description** Empty element.

**May occur within** ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author

authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction interpGrp item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT interp %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST interp
  %a.global;
  %a.interpret;
  value CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

See further 15.3 Spans and Interpretations

**<interpGrp>** (interpretation group) collects together <interp> tags.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from interpret, metadata

**Example**

```
<interpGrp resp="TMA" type="collection of structural units">
  <interp value="introduction"/>
  <interp value="conflict"/>
  <interp value="climax"/>
  <interp value="revenge"/>
```

```

    <interp value="reconciliation"/>
    <interp value="aftermath"/>
  </interpGrp>

```

*Module* Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

*Class* interpret; metadata

*Data Description* Any number of <interp> elements.

*May contain* interp

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT interpGrp %om.RR; ((interp)*)>
<!ATTLIST interpGrp
    %a.global;
    %a.interpret;>

```

*See further* 15.3 Spans and Interpretations

**<interpretation>** describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Example*

```

<interpretation>
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was
  added by hand and has not been checked</p>
</interpretation>

```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* editorialDecl

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT interpretation %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST interpretation
    %a.global;
    %a.declarable;>

```

*See further* 5.3.3 The Editorial Practices Declaration

**<item>** contains one component of a list.

*Example*

```

<list type="ordered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate
  one third of the Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>

```

```

      <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
      <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
      <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
      <item> ...</item>
    </list>

```

*Note* Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global `n` attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not `n`.

*Module* Declared in file `teicore2`; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

*May contain* #PCDATA `ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xptr xref`

*May occur within* `change list`

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT item %om.R0; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST item
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 6.7 Lists; 5.5 The Revision Description

**<i type>** (inflectional class) indicates the inflectional class associated with a lexical item.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, `dictionaryParts`, `morphInfo`)

**type** indicates the type of indicator used to specify the inflection class, when it is necessary to distinguish between the usual abbreviated indications (e.g. ‘inv’) and other kinds of indicators, such as special codes referring to conjugation patterns, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

`abbrev` abbreviated indicator

`verb table` coded reference to a table of verbs

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* This element is synonymous with `<gram type='inflectional type'>`.

*Module* Declared in file `teidict2`; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by `TEI.dictionaries`

*Class* `dictionaryParts`; `morphInfo`; `dictionaries`

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be ‘invariant’, ‘n 3’ etc.

*May contain* #PCDATA `abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref`

*May occur within* `dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans`

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT itype %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST itype
  %a.global;

```

```
%a.dictionaries;
type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<join>** identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontinuous elements which compose it.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata, pointer)

**targets** specifies the identifiers of the elements or passages to be joined into a virtual element.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* one or more valid identifiers, separated by white space.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**result** specifies the name of an element which this aggregation may be understood to represent.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* The generic identifier of an element in the current DTD.

*Default* %INHERITED;

**desc** (description) a brief phrase describing the virtual element created by the join.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters.

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Note* The desc attribute may be used to give a brief description of the virtual element, if its content or function are not obvious.

**scope** indicates whether the targets to be joined include the entire element indicated (the entire subtree including its root), or just the children of the target (the branches of the subtree).

*Datatype* (root | branches)

*Legal values are:*

**root** the rooted subtrees indicated by the targets attribute are joined, each subtree become a child of the virtual element created by the join

**branches** the children of the subtrees indicated by the targets attribute become the children of the virtual element (i.e. the roots of the subtrees are discarded)

*Default* root

```
Example <list><head>Authors</head>
<item id="uf">Figge, Udo </item>
<item id="ch">Heibach, Christiane </item>
<item id="gh">Heyer, Gerhard </item>
<item id="bp">Philipp, Bettina </item>
<item id="ms">Samiec, Monika </item>
<item id="ss">Schierholz, Stefan </item>
</list>
<!-- elsewhere ... -->
<join targets="ch bp ss" result="list" desc="Heidelberger authors"
scope="root"/>
```

*Note* In this example, the text contains a list of authors of articles in a journal; the <join> element is used to join into one virtual list the names of the authors who reside in Heidelberg.

*Example* The following example is discussed in section 14.7 *Aggregation*:

```
<sp who="hughie"><p>How does it go?
<q><l id="x1">da-da-da</l>
<l id="l2">gets a new frog</l>
<l>...</l>
</q></p></sp>
<sp who="louie"><p><q><l id="l1">When the old pond</l> ...</q></p></sp>
```

```

<sp who="dewey"><p><q>... <l id="l3">It's a new pond.</l></q></p>
<!-- ... -->
<join targets="l1 l2 l3" result="lg" desc="haiku" scope="root"/>
</sp>

```

The attribute `targOrder` is specified with a value of `Y` to indicate that the order of the three lines is significant. The attribute `scope` is allowed to take the default value of `root` to indicate that the virtual element being identified is a line group (`<lg>`) which contains the three `<l>` elements `L1`, `L2`, and `L3`, and not just their character data content.

In this example, the attribute `scope` is specified with the value of `branches` to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the `targets` attribute of the `<join>` element, discarding the `<list>` tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:

```

<p>Southern dialect (my own variety, at least) has only
  <list id="LP1">
    <item><s>I done gone</s></item>
    <item><s>I done went</s></item>
  </list> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and
  <list id="LP2">
    <item><s>I done go</s></item>
  </list>.</p>
<p>White Southern dialect also has
  <list id="LP3">
    <item><s>I've done gone</s></item>
    <item><s>I've done went</s></item>
  </list> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably
    be considered as borrowings from other varieties of English.</p>
<!-- ... -->
<join result="list" id="LST1" targets="LP1 LP2 LP3" scope="branches"
  desc="Sample sentences in Southern speech"/>

```

*Module* Declared in file `teiling2.dtd`; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by `TEI.linking`

*Class* `pointer`; metadata

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* `ab` `abbr` `activity` `actor` `add` `addName` `addrLine` `address` `admin` `affiliation` `analytic` `app` `argument` `author` `authority` `back` `bibl` `biblFull` `biblScope` `biblStruct` `birth` `bloc` `body` `byline` `camera` `caption` `case` `castGroup` `castItem` `castList` `cell` `channel` `cit` `cl` `classCode` `closer` `colloc` `constitution` `corr` `country` `creation` `damage` `date` `dateRange` `dateStruct` `dateline` `def` `del` `derivation` `descrip` `dictScrap` `distance` `distinct` `distributor` `div` `div0` `div1` `div2` `div3` `div4` `div5` `div6` `div7` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `domain` `edition` `editor` `education` `emph` `entry` `entryFree` `epigraph` `epilogue` `etym` `expan` `extent` `factuality` `figDesc` `figure` `firstLang` `foreName` `foreign` `form` `front` `funder` `fw` `gen` `genName` `geogName` `gloss` `gram` `gramGrp` `graph` `group` `head` `headItem` `headLabel` `hi` `hyph` `imprimatur` `imprint` `interaction` `item` `itype` `joinGrp` `l` `label` `lang` `langKnown` `language` `lbl` `lem` `lg` `lg1` `lg2` `lg3` `lg4` `lg5` `list` `listBibl` `locale` `m` `measure` `meeting` `mentioned` `metDecl` `monogr` `mood` `name` `nameLink` `note` `num` `number` `occasion` `occupation` `offset` `ofig` `opener` `orgDivn` `orgName` `orgTitle` `orgType` `orig` `orth` `otherForm` `p` `per` `performance` `persName` `phr` `placeName` `pos` `preparedness` `principal` `prologue` `pron` `pubPlace` `publicationStmnt` `publisher` `purpose` `q` `quote` `rdg` `rdgGrp` `re` `ref` `reg` `region` `rendition` `residence` `resp` `respStmnt` `restore` `role` `roleDesc` `roleName` `row` `rs` `s` `salute` `seg` `sense` `series` `set` `settlement` `sic` `signed` `soCalled` `socecStatus` `sound` `sp` `speaker` `sponsor` `stage` `street` `stress` `subc` `supplied` `surname` `syll` `symbol` `table` `tagUsage` `tech` `term` `termEntry` `text` `tig` `time` `timeRange` `timeStruct` `title` `titlePage` `titlePart` `tns` `tr` `trailer` `trans` `u` `unclear` `usg` `view` `w` `wit` `witDetail` `witList` `witness` `writing` `xr` `xref`

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT join %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST join
  %a.global;
  %a.pointer;
  targets IDREFS #REQUIRED
  result CDATA %INHERITED;
  desc CDATA %INHERITED;
  scope (root | branches) "root">

```

*See further* 14.7 *Aggregation*

**<joinGrp>** (join group) groups a collection of **<join>** elements and possibly pointers.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata, pointerGroup)

**result** describes the result of the joins gathered in this collection.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* where specified on a **<joinGrp>** element, it supplies the default value for the result on each **<join>** included within the group.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**desc** (description) a brief phrase describing the virtual elements created by the joins in this collection.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The desc attribute may be used to give a brief description of the virtual elements joined in this **<joinGrp>** if their function and significance are not obvious.

*Example*

```
<joinGrp targType="q" domains="zuitxt" result="q">
  <join targets="zuiq1 zuiq2 zuiq6"/>
  <join targets="zuiq3 zuiq4 zuiq5"/>
</joinGrp>
```

*Module* Declared in file teiLink2.dtd; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Class* pointerGroup; metadata

*Data Description* Any number of joins, pointers or extended pointers.

*May contain* join ptr xptr

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT joinGrp %om.RR; ((join | ptr | xptr)*)>
<!ATTLIST joinGrp
  %a.global;
  %a.pointerGroup;
  result CDATA #IMPLIED
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 14.7 Aggregation

**<keywords>** (Keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**scheme** identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* identifier of the associated <taxonomy> element

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<keywords scheme="b1">
  <list>
    <item>Babbage, Charles</item>
    <item>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</item>
  </list>
</keywords>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* list term

*May occur within* textClass

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT keywords %om.R0; (term+ | list)>
<!ATTLIST keywords
  %a.global;
  scheme IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 5.4.3 *The Text Classification*

**<kinesic>** (Non-vocalized quasi-lexical) any communicative phenomenon, not necessarily vocalized, for example a gesture, frown, etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.spoken, timed)

**who** supplies an identifier for the participant performing the gesture. Its value is the identifier of a <participant> or <participant.grp> element in the TEI header.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a participant or participant group within the TEI Header

*Default* %INHERITED;

**iterated** (iterated) indicates whether or not the phenomenon is repeated.

*Datatype* ( y | n | u )

*Legal values are:*

y the phenomenon is repeated.

n the phenomenon is atomic.

u unknown or unmarked.

*Default* n

**desc** (description) supplies a conventional representation for the phenomenon.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a description or representation of the phenomenon chosen from a semi-closed list

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<kinesic dur="1.5secs" iterated="y" desc="shaking head vigorously"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teispok2; Base tag set for Transcribed Speech: enabled by TEI.spoken

*Class* comp.spoken; timed

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set u

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT kinesic %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST kinesic
  %a.global;
  %a.timed;
```

```

who IDREF %INHERITED;
iterated ( y | n | u ) "n"
desc CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

See further 11.2.7 *Formal Definition*; 11.2 *Elements Unique to Spoken Texts*; 11.2.3 *Vocal, Kinesic, Event*

**<l>** (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from chunk, enjamb, metrical)

**part** specifies whether or not the line is metrically complete.

*Datatype* (Y | N | I | M | F)

*Legal values are:*

Y	the line is metrically incomplete
N	either the line is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness
I	the initial part of an incomplete line
M	a medial part of an incomplete line
F	the final part of an incomplete line

*Default* N

*Note* The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the line is to be reconstituted.

*Example*

```
<l met="-/-/-/-/" part="Y"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Base tag set for Verse: enabled by TEI.verse

*Class* chunk; metrical; enjamb

*Data Description* contains character data or phrase level elements only

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue item lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic sp stage view

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT l %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST l
  %a.global;
  %a.metical;
  %a.enjamb;
  part (Y | N | I | M | F) "N">

```

See further 6.11.1 *Core Tags for Verse*; 6.11 *Passages of Verse or Drama*; 10.2.4 *Speech Contents*

**<label>** contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from lists

*Example* Labels are most commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```

<list type="gloss" lang="ME">
<head lang="EN">Vocabulary</head>
<headLabel lang="EN">Middle English</headLabel>
<headItem lang="EN">New English</headItem>
<label>nu</label><item lang="EN">now</item>
<label>lhude</label><item lang="EN">loudly</item>

```

```

<label>bloweth</label><item lang="EN">blooms</item>
<label>med</label><item lang="EN">meadow</item>
<label>wude</label><item lang="EN">wood</item>
<label>awe</label><item lang="EN">ewe</item>
<label>lhouth</label><item lang="EN">lows</item>
<label>sterteth</label><item lang="EN">bounds, frisks
  (cf. <cit><ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref><q>a courser,
  <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</q></cit></item>
<label>verteth</label><item lang="LA">pedit</item>
<label>murie</label><item lang="EN">merrily</item>
<label>swik</label><item lang="EN">cease</item>
<label>naver</label><item lang="EN">never</item>
</list>

```

Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the `<label>` element is synonymous with the `n` attribute on the `<item>` element:

```

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in
the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
<label>(1)</label><item>My first rough manuscript, without any
intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item>
<label>(2) </label><item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human
eyes, excepting those of the author and the printer:
the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>

```

Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```

<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod &mdash;
    <q lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.</q></item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>

```

**Module** Declared in file `teicore2`; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** lists

**Data Description** May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

**May occur within** ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem list meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT label %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST label
  %a.global;>

```

**See further** 6.7 Lists

**<lacunaEnd>** indicates the end of a lacuna in a mostly complete textual witness.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from fragmentary

*Example*

```
<rdg wit="X">
  <lacunaEnd/>auctorite</rdg>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* fragmentary

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* lem rdg

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lacunaEnd %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST lacunaEnd
  %a.global;
  %a.fragmentary;>
```

*See further* 19.1.5 *Fragmentary Witnesses*

**<lacunaStart>** indicates the beginning of a lacuna in the text of a mostly complete textual witness.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from fragmentary

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* fragmentary

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* lem rdg

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lacunaStart %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST lacunaStart
  %a.global;
  %a.fragmentary;>
```

*See further* 19.1.5 *Fragmentary Witnesses*

**<lang>** (language name) name of a language mentioned in etymological or other linguistic discussion.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from data, dictionaries

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form><orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>
    <lang>ME.</lang> <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>,
    <lang>F.</lang> <mentioned>publier</mentioned>,
    <lang>L.</lang> <mentioned>publicare, publicatum</mentioned>.
    <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. <ref>2d -ish</ref>.</xr>
  </etym>
  <!-- ... -->
</entry>
<!-- (From: Webster's Second International) -->
```

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionaries

*Class* data; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data mixed with phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName

foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lang %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST lang
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.4 *Etymological Information*

**<langKnown>** (linguistic competence) contains an informal description of a person's competence in different languages, dialects, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from demographic

*Example*

```
<langKnown>Spoken French</langKnown>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT langKnown %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST langKnown
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<language>** identifies the language being described in the writing system declaration.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**iso639** gives the two-letter standard language code from ISO 639:1988 (or its revised version ISO 639-1 when that becomes standard), or a three-letter code from ISO 639-2: 1998.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any two- or three-letter code included in ISO 639; if the language is not included in the list in ISO 639, the value should be given as the empty string.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```
<language iso639=''>Various</language>
<language iso639="GRC">Classical Greek</language>
```

*Note* In general, the 'language' associated with a given writing system declaration will be a natural language; it may however be a dialect, an artificial language, or some other semiotic system conveniently treated as a language. The content of the <language> element is a description in prose of what language the WSD describes. Usually this will simply be the conventional name of the language; more information may however be included as needed. Specialized writing system declarations which document a public character set or entity set suitable for encoding

several languages, and which are intended for use as a base component within other language-specific writing system declarations, should identify the <language> to which they apply as “Various”. Such writing systems should *not* be used directly by encoded texts; they should be named only in the <baseWsd> element of language-specific writing system declarations.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain character data only.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* langUsage

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT language %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST language
  %a.global;
  iso639 CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

*See further* 25.2 *Identifying the Language*; 25.1 *Overall Structure of Writing System Declaration*

**<language>** characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**wsd** specifies the entity containing the *writing system declaration* used for representing texts in this language.

*Datatype* ENTITY

*Values* the named entity should contain a full writing system declaration conforming to the auxiliary WSD document type declaration.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* On this element, the global id attribute specifies the identifier for the *writing system declaration* for this language (e.g. *eng, fra, deu*). Its value will usually be a language identifier from ISO 639, possibly extended to indicate the writing system in use (e.g. *heb-hel* for Hebrew written in Greek).

The entity containing the writing system declaration will typically be an external (unparsed) entity; it must be declared in the DTD.

**usage** specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a whole number between 1 and 100

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<language id="lap" usage="100">Pig Latin</language>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element in addition to the specification implied by the WSD

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* langUsage

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT language %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST language
  %a.global;
  wsd ENTITY #IMPLIED
  usage CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 5.4.2 *Language Usage*

**<langUsage>** (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects etc. represented within a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Example*

```
<langUsage>
  <language wsd="FR" usage="60">Qu&eacute;becois</language>
  <language wsd="EN" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language wsd="EN" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*Data Description* may contain either a simple prose description, or more formally one or more

<language> elements

*May contain* language p

*May occur within* profileDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT langUsage %om.R0; (p | language)+>
<!ATTLIST langUsage
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 5.4.2 Language Usage; 5.4 The Profile Description; 23.3.2 Declarable Elements

**<lb>** (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from refsys)

**ed** (edition) indicates the edition or version in which the line break is located at this point

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<lb n="123" ed="Riverside"/>
```

*Note* On this element, the global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the line which follows the point of insertion of this <lb>. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with line breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the line within the page, or to some aspect of the logical structure of the text. By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the start of the line to which they refer. The <lb> tag is intended for making typographic line breaks in prose. It should be carefully distinguished from the <l> element, used to mark lines of verse.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* refsys

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker

sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lb %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST lb
  %a.global;
  ed CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.9.3 Milestone Tags; 10.2.4 Speech Contents

**<lb1>** (label) in dictionaries, contains a label for a form, example, translation, or other piece of information, e.g. ‘abbreviation for’, ‘contraction of’, ‘literally’, ‘approximately’, ‘synonyms:’, etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, formInfo, gramInfo)

**type** classifies the label using any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters, such as ‘usage’, ‘sense restriction’, etc.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Labels specifically relating to usage should be tagged with the special-purpose <usg> element rather than with the generic <lb1> element.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; formInfo; gramInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans xr

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lb1 %om.RO; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST lb1
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 Information on Written and Spoken Forms; 12.3.3.2 Translation Equivalents; 12.3.5.3 Cross References to Other Entries; 12.3.1 Information on Written and Spoken Forms

**<leaf>** encodes the leaves (terminal nodes) of a tree.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**label** gives a label for a leaf.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**value** provides the value of a leaf, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* A valid identifier of a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**parent** provides the identifier of parent of a leaf.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of the parent node.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**follow** provides an identifier of an element which this leaf follows.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of another intermediate node or leaf of the tree.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If the tree is unordered or partially ordered, this attribute has the property of fixing the relative order of the leaf and the element which is the value of the attribute.

*Example*

```
<leaf id="peri1" label="periscope" parent="n1"/>
```

*Note* The in degree of a leaf is always 1, its out degree always 0.

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* tree

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT leaf %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST leaf
  %a.global;
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  value IDREF #IMPLIED
  parent IDREF #IMPLIED
  follow IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.2 *Trees*

**<lem>** (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from readings

*Note* The term *lemma* is used in text criticism to describe the reading in the text itself (as opposed to those in the apparatus); this usage is distinct from that of mathematics (where a lemma is a major step in a proof) and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary form associated with an inflected form in the running text).

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* readings

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail witEnd witStart xptr xref

*May occur within* app

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lem %om.RO; ( #PCDATA | %m.phrase; | %m.inter; |
  %m.Incl; | %m.fragmentary; )* >
<!ATTLIST lem
  %a.global;
  %a.readings;>
```

*See further* 19.1 *The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses*

**<lg>** (line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from chunk, divn

*Example*

```
<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
```

```

    <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="free">
    <l>is equivocal.</l>
    <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="free">
    <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
    <l>the explanation.</l>
  </lg>

```

**Module** Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** chunk; divn

**Data Description** contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

**May contain** addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument byline cb certainty closer dateline delSpan docAuthor docDate epigraph fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l lb lg link linkGrp milestone opener pb respons salute signed span spanGrp timeline trailer

**May occur within** add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue item lg metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic sp stage view

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT lg %om.R0; ((%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*,
                      (l | lg), (l | lg | %m.Incl;)*,
                      (%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST lg
  %a.global;
  %a.divn;>

```

*See further* 6.11.1 *Core Tags for Verse*; 6.11 *Passages of Verse or Drama*; 10.2.4 *Speech Contents*

**<lg1>** (line group) contains a first-level (i.e. largest) group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from comp.verse, divn

**Example**

```

<lg1 n="VIII" type="stanza">
  <lg2 type="sestet">
    <l>In the first year of Freedom's second dawn</l>
    <l>Died George the Third; although no tyrant, one</l>
    <l>Who shielded tyrants, till each sense withdrawn</l>
    <l>Left him nor mental nor external sun:</l>
    <l>A better farmer ne'er brushed dew from lawn,</l>
    <l>A worse king never left a realm undone!</l>
  </lg2>
  <lg2 type="couplet">
    <l>He died &dash; but left his subjects still behind,</l>
    <l>One half as mad &dash; and t'other no less blind.</l>
  </lg2>
</lg1>

```

**Module** Declared in file teivers2.dtd; Base tag set for Verse: enabled by TEI.verse

**Class** comp.verse; divn

**Data Description** contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

**May contain** addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l lb lg2 link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline

**May occur within** argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set

**Declaration**

```

<!ELEMENT lg1 %om.R0;
((%m.Incl;)*, (head, (%m.Incl;)*), (l|lg2), (%m.Incl;)*+)>
<!ATTLIST lg1
  %a.global;
  %a.divn;>

```

*See further* 9.2 *Structural Divisions of Verse Texts*

**<lg2>** (line group) contains a second-level (i.e. second largest) group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.verse, divn

*Module* Declared in file teivers2.dtd; Base tag set for Verse: enabled by TEI.verse

*Class* comp.verse; divn

*Data Description* contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp  
l lb lg3 link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue lg1 metDecl  
performance prologue set

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lg2 %om.RO;
((%m.Incl;)*, (head, (%m.Incl;)*)?, ((l|lg3), (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST lg2
    %a.global;
    %a.divn;>
```

*See further* 9.2 *Structural Divisions of Verse Texts*

**<lg3>** (line group) contains a third-level (i.e. third largest) group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.verse, divn

*Module* Declared in file teivers2.dtd; Base tag set for Verse: enabled by TEI.verse

*Class* comp.verse; divn

*Data Description* contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp  
l lb lg4 link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue lg2 metDecl  
performance prologue set

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lg3 %om.RO; ((%m.Incl;)*, (head,
(%m.Incl;)*)?, ((l|lg4), (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST lg3
    %a.global;
    %a.divn;>
```

*See further* 9.2 *Structural Divisions of Verse Texts*

**<lg4>** (line group) contains a fourth-level (i.e. fourth largest) group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.verse, divn

*Module* Declared in file teivers2.dtd; Base tag set for Verse: enabled by TEI.verse

*Class* comp.verse; divn

*Data Description* contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp  
l lb lg5 link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue lg3 metDecl  
performance prologue set

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lg4 %om.RO; ((%m.Incl;)*, (head,
(%m.Incl;)*)?, ((l|lg5), (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST lg4
    %a.global;
    %a.divn;>
```

*See further* 9.2 *Structural Divisions of Verse Texts*

**<lg5>** (line group) contains a fifth-level (i.e. smallest) group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.verse, divn

*Module* Declared in file teivers2.dtd; Base tag set for Verse: enabled by TEI.verse

*Class* comp.verse; divn

*Data Description* contains verse lines only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue lg4 metDecl performance prologue set

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT lg5 %om.RO; ((%m.Incl;)*, (head,
(%m.Incl;)*)?, (l, (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST lg5
    %a.global;
    %a.divn;>
```

*See further* 9.2 *Structural Divisions of Verse Texts*

**<line>** contains one line of a reference edition.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<(La)page n="32">
  <(La)line n="1"><!-- text of edition La, p. 32, l. 1--> </(La)line>
  <(La)line n="2"><!-- text of edition La, p. 32, l. 2 --></(La)line>
  <(La)line n="3"><!-- text of edition La, p. 32, l. 3 --> </(La)line>
  <(La)line n="4"><!-- text of edition La, p. 32, l. 4 --> </(La)line>
</(La)page>
```

*Module* Declared in file teipl2; Auxiliary tag set for concurrent markup of pages and lines

*Data Description* May contain character data only.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT line %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST line
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 31.6 *Concurrent Markup for Pages and Lines*

**<link>** defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata, pointer)

**targets** specifies the identifiers of the elements or passages to be linked or associated.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* One or more valid identifiers, separated by white space.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements. The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the type attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>.

*Module* Declared in file teilink2.dtd; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Class* pointer; metadata

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline

def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 linkGrp list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT link %om.R0; EMPTY >
<!ATTLIST link
    %a.global;
    %a.pointer;
    targets IDREFS #REQUIRED>
```

See further 14.1 Pointers

**<linkGrp>** defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from metadata, pointerGroup

### Example

```
<linkGrp type='translation'>
  <link targets='S1 z1' />
  <link targets='S2 z2' />
  <!-- ... -->
  <link targets='S99 z99' type='paraphrase' />
</linkGrp>
```

*Note* A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the type attribute.

*Module* Declared in file teiLink2.dtd; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Class* pointerGroup; metadata

*Data Description* May contain one or more <link> elements only, optionally with interspersed pointer elements.

*May contain* link ptr xptr

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT linkGrp %om.RR; (link | ptr | xptr)+ >
<!ATTLIST linkGrp
```

```
%a.global;
%a.pointerGroup;>
```

See further 14.1 Pointers

**<list>** contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from lists)

**type** describes the form of the list.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**ordered** list items are numbered or lettered.

**bulleted** list items are marked with a bullet or other typographic device.

**simple** list items are not numbered or bulleted.

**gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

*Default* simple

*Note* The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

*Example*

```
<list type="ordered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
<list type="bullets">
  <item>rings on his fingers</item>
  <item>bells on his toes</item>
</list>
</item>
</list>
```

The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section"><head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
<list type="ordered">
<item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be
  spared who is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over
  twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence.
<list type="ordered">
<item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the
  thief with his wergild &mdash; and the thief is to be no nearer a
  settlement on that account &mdash; or to clear himself by an oath of
  that amount.</item>
<item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself
  or to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older
  than twelve].</item>
<item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison
  40 days, and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the
  kindred are to stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.</item>
<item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
  with his wergild, or to bring him back there.</item>
<item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay
  for him with his wergild, whether to the king or to him
  to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who
  supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>
</list></item>
<item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
  lordless men, from whom no justice can be obtained, that one
  should order their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice
  and to find him a lord in public meeting.
<list type="ordered">
  <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
```

```

        that appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and
        he who encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.</item>
<item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
        with his wergild or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list></item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who
        refuses justice and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is
        appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and 120 shillings
        to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands
        justice as often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the
        other would have done, if he had refused him justice.
        <list type="ordered">
<item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
        slave, and it becomes known about him, is to forfeit the slave
        and be liable to his wergild on the first occasionp if he does it
        more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>
<item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
        reeves, who has been an accessory of thieves who have committed
        theft, is to liable to the same.</item>
        </list></item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
        concerning treachery to a lord, that he [who is accused] is to
        forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted
        at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>

```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

```

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the
public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your
stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed
with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy Cross.
<list type="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy
church of York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic
validity of this document with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, &AElig;lfwold, king of the people across the Humber,
consenting have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing
have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying
have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have
subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed
with devout will.</item>
  <item>I, &AElig;thelwine, bishop, have subscribed through
delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind
with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>

```

**Module** Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** lists

**Data Description** May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

**May contain** addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head headItem headLabel index interp interpGrp item join joinGrp label lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline

**May occur within** ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign

form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype keywords l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition revisionDesc seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT list %om.RR; ((%m.Incl;)*, (head, (%m.Incl;)*)?, ( ( item,
(%m.Incl;)*)*
| ((headLabel, (%m.Incl;)*)?, (headItem, (%m.Incl;)*)?, (label,
(%m.Incl;)*, item, (%m.Incl;)*+)))>
<!ATTLIST list
  %a.global;
  type CDATA "simple">
```

*See further* 6.7 Lists

**<listBibl>** (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable, lists

*Example*

```
<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
</bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* lists; declarable

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor bibl biblFull biblStruct cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline trailer

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound sourceDesc stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT listBibl %om.RR; ((%m.Incl;)*, (head, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
(bibl | biblStruct | biblFull),
(bibl | biblStruct | biblFull | %m.Incl;)*,
(trailer, (%m.Incl;)*)?>
<!ATTLIST listBibl
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 6.10.1 *Elements of Bibliographic References*; 5.2.7 *The Source Description*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<locale>** (locale) contains a brief informal description of the nature of a place for example a room, a restaurant, a park bench etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

### Example

```
<locale>a fashionable restaurant</locale>
```

**Module** Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

**Data Description** May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

**May occur within** setting

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT locale %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST locale
  %a.global;>
```

**See further** 23.2.3 *The Setting Description*

**<m>** (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from seg)

**baseform** identifies the morpheme's base form.

**Datatype** CDATA

**Values** a string of characters representing the spelling of the morpheme's base form.

**Default** #IMPLIED

### Example

```
<w type="adjective">
  <w type="noun">
    <m type="prefix" baseform="con">com</m>
    <m type="root">fort</m>
  </w>
  <m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>
```

**Module** Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

**Class** seg

**Data Description** May contain character data, <seg>, and <c> elements only.

**May contain** #PCDATA addSpan alt altGrp anchor c cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib fw gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons seg span spanGrp timeline

**May occur within** ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT m %om.RR; (#PCDATA | seg | c | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST m
  %a.global;
  %a.seg;
  baseform CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

**See further** 15.1 *Linguistic Segment Categories*

**<measure>** contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, names)

**type** specifies the type of unit in which the measure is expressed.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

**weight** measure of weight e.g. kg, pound.

**count** unit of count, e.g. dozen, score.

**length** measure of length, e.g. pole, mm.

**area** measure of area e.g. acre, hectare.

**volume** measure of volume e.g. litre, gallon.

**currency** unit of currency e.g. ecu, escudo, mark.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<measure key="LBSF11" type="weight">
  <num>2</num> pounds of flesh</measure>
<measure reg="$1.56" type="currency">a quid</measure>
<measure reg="8 ECU" type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data; names

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT measure %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST measure
  %a.global;
  %a.names;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.3 Numbers and Measures

**<meeting>** in bibliographic references, contains a description of the meeting or conference from which the bibliographic item derives.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<meeting>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German
  Textual Criticism, Aachen, June 1998.</meeting>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* monogr

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT meeting %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST meeting
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.10.2.2 *Authors, Titles, and Editors*

**<mentioned>** marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from hqphrase

*Example*

```
There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal
form like <mentioned id="c234" lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="c234">we were released,</gloss> accented on
the second syllable of the word, and its
participial derivative <mentioned id="c235" lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="c235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*Data Description* free prose

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT mentioned %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST mentioned
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.3.4 *Terms, Glosses, and Cited Words*

**<metDecl>** documents the notation employed to represent a metrical pattern when this is specified as the value of a met, real, or rhyme attribute on any structural element of a metrical text (e.g. <lg>, <l>, or <seg>).

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from declarable)

**type** indicates whether the notation conveys the abstract metrical form, its actual prosodic realization, or the rhyme scheme, or some combination thereof.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* One or more of the three attribute names met, real, or rhyme, separated by whitespace.

*Default* met real

*Note* By default, the <metDecl> element documents the notation used for metrical pattern and realization. It may also be used to document the notation used for rhyme scheme information; if not otherwise documented, the rhyme scheme notation defaults to the traditional “abab” notation.

**pattern** specifies a regular expression defining any value that is legal for this notation.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* the value must be a valid expression for the PATTERN keyword as defined in the TEI extended pointer notation (see section 14.2.2.14 *The PATTERN Keyword*).

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<metDecl pattern="( (1|0)+ \\\|? /? )* "/>
<metDecl pattern="((+|-|-+)-+--+--+/)" />
```

*Example*

```
<metDecl id="ip" pattern="((+|-|-+)-+--+--+/)">
  <symbol value="+">stressed syllable</symbol>
  <symbol value="-">unstressed syllable</symbol>
  <symbol value="/">metrical line boundary</symbol>
</metDecl>
```

This example is intended for the far more restricted case typified by the Shakespearean iambic pentameter. Only metrical patterns containing exactly ten syllables, alternately stressed and unstressed, (except for the first two which may be in either order) to each metrical line can be expressed using this notation.

*Note* The encoder may choose whether to define the notation formally or informally. However, the two methods may not be mixed. Only usable within the header if the verse base is enabled.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*Data Description* contains either a sequence of <symbol> elements or paragraphs. If one <symbol> is defined, then all the codes appearing within the pattern attribute should be documented, if the latter is specified.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor bibl biblFull biblStruct camera caption castList cb certainty cit delSpan eTree entry entryFree event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note p pause pb q quote respons shift sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry symbol tech termEntry timeline tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT metDecl %om.RO; ((%component.seq;) | (symbol+))>
<!ATTLIST metDecl
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;
  type CDATA "met real"
  pattern CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 5.3.8 *The Metrical Declaration Element*; 9.4 *Rhyme and Metrical Analysis*

**<milestone>** marks the boundary between sections of a text, as indicated by changes in a standard reference system.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from refsys)

**ed** (edition) indicates which edition or version the milestone applies to.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**unit** indicates what kind of section is changing at this milestone.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**page** page breaks in the reference edition.  
**column** column breaks.  
**line** line breaks.  
**book** any units termed book, liber, etc.  
**poem** individual poems in a collection.  
**canto** cantos or other major sections of a poem.  
**stanza** stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.  
**act** acts within a play.  
**scene** scenes within a play or act.  
**section** sections of any kind.  
**absent** passages not present in the reference edition.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value *absent* may be used as the value of unit. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next <mi lestone> tag for the edition in question is encountered.

In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

*Example*

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
...
<milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/>
...
```

*Note* For this element, the global n attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value 'unnumbered' should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme (e.g. chapter heads, poem numbers or titles, or speaker attributions in verse drama). Milestones for page and column should precede milestones for line numbers.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* refsys

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT milestone %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST milestone
  %a.global;
  ed CDATA #IMPLIED
  unit CDATA #REQUIRED>
```

*See further* 6.9.3 Milestone Tags

**<minus>** (Binary minus value) provides binary minus value for a feature.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from binary

*Example*

```
<f name="nasal"><minus/></f>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* binary

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT minus %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST minus
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 16.2 *Elementary Feature Structures: Features with Binary Values*

**<minute>** (minute) the minute component of a structured time-expression.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

*Example*

```
The train leaves for Boston at
<timeStruct value="1345">
  <hour>13</hour>:
  <minute>45</minute>
</timeStruct>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT minute %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST minute
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;>
```

*See further* 20.4 *Dates and Time*

**<monogr>** (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object).

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

*Note* The <monogr> element may occur only within bibliographic citation or reference elements; it is mandatory for description of the monographic level of <biblStruct> elements.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*Data Description* May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor author biblScope cb certainty delSpan edition editor extent fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap imprint index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp meeting milestone note pb respStmt respons span spanGrp timeline title

*May occur within* bibl biblStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT monogr %om.R0; (( (%m.Incl;)*,
  ((
    (author | editor | respStmt),
    (author | editor | respStmt | %m.Incl;)*,
    (title, (%m.Incl;)*)+,
    ( (editor | respStmt), (%m.Incl;)* ) * )
  | (
    (title, (%m.Incl;)*)+,
```

```

        ((author | editor | respStmt), (%m.Incl;))*
    )))?,
    ((note | meeting), (%m.Incl;))**,
    (edition, (editor | respStmt | %m.Incl;))**, imprint,
    (imprint | extent | biblScope | %m.Incl;)*
  )>
<!ATTLIST monogr
    %a.global;>

```

See further 6.10.2.1 *Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels*

**<month>** (month) the month component of a structured date.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

*Example*

```

<dateStruct value="1993-05-14">
  <day type="name">Friday</day>,
  <day type="number">14</day>
  <month type="name">May</month>
  <year>1993</year>
</dateStruct>

```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT month %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST month
    %a.global;
    %a.temporalExpr;>

```

See further 20.4 *Dates and Time*

**<mood>** contains information about the grammatical mood of verbs (e.g. “indicative”, “subjunctive”, “imperative”)

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, morphInfo

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type=mood>.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionaries

*Class* morphInfo; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptra xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT mood %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST mood
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;>

```

See further 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<move>** (Movement) marks the actual entrance or exit of one or more characters on stage.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from stageDirection)

**who** identifies the character or characters performing the movement.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* The references are derived from the id attribute on the <role> elements in the cast list.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**type** characterizes the movement, for example as an entrance or exit.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

entrance character is entering the stage.

exit character is exiting the stage.

onstage character moves on stage

*Default* #IMPLIED

**where** specifies the direction of a stage movement.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

L stage left

R stage right

C centre stage

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Full blocking information will normally require combinations of values, (for example “UL” for “upper stage left”) and may also require more detailed encoding of speed, direction etc. Full documentation of any coding system used should be provided in the header.

**perf** identifies the performance or performances in which this movement occurred as specified.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* The references are derived from the id attribute on a <performance> element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<stage type="entrance">
  <move who="b" type="enter" where="SL" perf="p1"/>
  Enter Bellafront mad.</stage>
```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* stageDirection

*Data Description* Empty

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT move %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST move
  %a.global;
  who IDREFS #REQUIRED
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  where CDATA #IMPLIED
  perf IDREFS #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 10.2.3 Stage Directions

**<msr>** (Measure value) provides a measure value or range of values for a feature.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from singleVal)

**value** provides a numeric value.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* A real number or integer.  
*Default* #REQUIRED

**valueTo** together with value attribute, provides a range of numeric values.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* A real number or integer.  
*Default* #IMPLIED

**unit** provides a unit for a measure feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* A string, e.g. *meter*.  
*Default* #REQUIRED

**rel** indicates the relation of the given value or range to the actual value or range.

*Datatype* (eq|ne|lt|le|gt|ge)  
*Legal values are:*

- eq indicates that the actual value or range is that given.
- ne indicates that the actual value or range is not the value or range given.
- lt indicates that the actual value or range is less than the given value or range.
- le indicates that the actual value or range is less than or equal to the given value or range.
- gt indicates that the actual value or range is greater than the given value or range.
- ge indicates that the actual value or range is greater than or equal to the given value or range.

*Default* eq

**type** indicates whether value or range is to be understood as real or integer.

*Datatype* (int|real)  
*Legal values are:*

- int specifies that value is an integer; if noninteger is given as value of value, then only integer part is used.
- real specifies that value is a real number.

*Default* #IMPLIED

#### *Example*

```
<msr value="10000" valueTo="20000" unit="guilder"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* singleVal

*Data Description* Empty tag.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

#### *Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT msr %om.RO; EMPTY>  
<!ATTLIST msr  
  %a.globa1;  
  value CDATA #REQUIRED  
  valueTo CDATA #IMPLIED  
  unit CDATA #REQUIRED  
  rel (eq|ne|lt|le|gt|ge) "eq"  
  type (int|real) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 16.4 *Symbolic, Numeric, Measurement, Rate and String Values*

**<name>** (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from addrPart, agent, data, names)

**type** indicates the type of the object which is being named by the phrase.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Values such as person, place, institution, product, acronym.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <person>, <place>, or <org>.

*Module* Declared in file dummy; Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data; agent; names; addrPart

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense setting settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT name %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST name
  %a.global;
  %a.names;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.1 Referring Strings

**<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as “van der” or “of”.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from personPart

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <foreName>Frederick</foreName>
  <nameLink>van der</nameLink>
  <surname>Tronck</surname>
</persName>

<persName>
  <foreName>Alfred</foreName>
  <nameLink>de</nameLink>
  <surname>Musset</surname>
</persName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* personPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

May occur within persName

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT nameLink %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST nameLink
  %a.global;
  %a.personPart;>
```

See further 20.1 Personal Names

**<nbr>** (Numeric value) provides a numeric value or range of values for a feature.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from singleVal)

**value** provides a numeric value.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A real number or integer.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**valueTo** together with value attribute, provides a range of numeric values.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A real number or integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**rel** indicates the relation of the given value or range to the actual value or range.

*Datatype* (eq|ne|lt|le|gt|ge)

*Legal values are:*

eq indicates that the actual value or range is that given.

ne indicates that the actual value or range is not the value or range given.

lt indicates that the actual value or range is less than the given value or range.

le indicates that the actual value or range is less than or equal to the given value or range.

gt indicates that the actual value or range is greater than the given value or range.

ge indicates that the actual value or range is greater than or equal to the given value or range.

*Default* eq

**type** indicates whether value or range is to be understood as real or integer.

*Datatype* (int|real)

*Legal values are:*

int specifies that value is an integer; if noninteger is given as value of value, then only integer part is used.

real specifies that value is a real number.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**Example**

```
<nbr value="0" rel="ge" type="int"/>
```

**Module** Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

**Class** singleVal

**Data Description** Empty tag.

**May occur within** f fvLib vAlt

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT nbr %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST nbr
  %a.global;
  value CDATA #REQUIRED
  valueTo CDATA #IMPLIED
  rel (eq|ne|lt|le|gt|ge) "eq"
  type (int|real) #IMPLIED>
```

See further 16.4 Symbolic, Numeric, Measurement, Rate and String Values

**<node>** encodes a node, a possibly labeled point in a graph.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**label** gives a label for a node.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**label2** gives a second label for a node.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Use this attribute together with the label attribute if a transducer is being encoded whose actions are associated with nodes rather than with arcs.

**value** provides the value of a node, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* A valid identifier.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**type** provides a type for a node.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

*initial* initial node in a transition network

*final* final node in a transition network

*Default* #IMPLIED

**adjTo** gives the identifiers of the nodes which are adjacent to the current node.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* A list of identifiers.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**adjFrom** gives the identifiers of the nodes which are adjacent from the current node.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* A list of identifiers.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**adj** gives the identifiers of the nodes which are both adjacent to and adjacent from the current node.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* A list of identifiers.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Use this attribute instead of the adjTo and adjFrom attributes when the graph is undirected and vice versa if the graph is directed.

**inDegree** gives the in degree of the node, the number of nodes which are adjacent from the given node.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A non-negative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**outDegree** gives the out degree of the node, the number of nodes which are adjacent to the given node.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A non-negative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**degree** gives the degree of the node, the number of arcs with which the node is incident.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A non-negative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Use this attribute instead of the inDegree and outDegree attributes when the graph is undirected and vice versa if the graph is directed.

*Example*

```
<node id="t6" label="6" type="final" inDegree="2" outDegree="0"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* graph

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT node %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST node
  %a.global;
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  label2 CDATA #IMPLIED
  value IDREF #IMPLIED
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  adjTo IDREFS #IMPLIED
  adjFrom IDREFS #IMPLIED
  adj IDREFS #IMPLIED
  inDegree CDATA #IMPLIED
  outDegree CDATA #IMPLIED
  degree CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.1 *Graphs and Digraphs*

**<none>** (None value) represents boolean *false* value variable.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from boolean

*Example*

```
<f name="inflection"><none/></f>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* boolean

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT none %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST none
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 16.8 *Boolean, Default and Uncertain Values*

**<normalization>** indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from declarable)

**source** indicates the authority for any normalization carried out.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Should really be a bibliographic reference of some kind

*Default* #IMPLIED

**method** indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.

*Datatype* ( silent | tags )

*Legal values are:*

silent normalization made silently

tags normalization represented using editorial tags

*Default* silent

*Example*

```

<editorialDecl>
  <normalization source="WWP" method="tags">
    <p>The use of both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv has
      been normalized to modern 20th century typographical practices
      using the <seg type="ident" subtype="gi">orig</seg> element and
      its <seg type="ident" subtype="att ">reg</seg> attribute. ... </p>
    <!-- ... -->
  </normalization>
  <normalization source="WWP" method="silent">
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been
      regularized to zero spaces; spacing between words has been
      regularized to one space.</p>
  </normalization>
  <!-- ... -->
</editorialDecl>

```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* editorialDecl

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT normalization %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST normalization
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;
  source CDATA #IMPLIED
  method ( silent | tags ) "silent">

```

See further 5.3.3 *The Editorial Practices Declaration*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<note>** (in a writing system) contains a note of any type.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<note>This writing system declaration describes the ad hoc
  character set developed for encoding Hebrew and Arabic for the
  Geniza Project at Princeton University. It is intended for
  documentation of existing files only and should not be used to
  guide the implementation of new systems.
</note>

```

A note may also relate to a single character:

```

<note>This character is the Japanese form of the unified Han
  character xxxx in ISO 10646; for the Korean form, use the
  preceding character.</note>

```

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain character data only.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* ab add admin argument bibl biblStruct body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hom hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl monogr mood note notesStmt number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg re ref region rendition seg sense set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech termEntry tig title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT note %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST note
  %a.global;>

```

See further 25.5 *Notes in the WSD*; 25.1 *Overall Structure of Writing System Declaration*

**<note>** contains a note or annotation.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from `bibliPart`, `dictionaryTopLevel`, `notes`, `terminologyInclusions`)

**type** describes the type of note.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Values can be taken from any convenient typology of annotation suitable to the work in hand; e.g. annotation, gloss, citation, digression, preliminary, temporary

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsible) indicates who is responsible for the annotation: author, editor, translator, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

auth[or] note originated with the author of the text.

ed[itor] note added by the editor of the text.

comp[iler] note added by the compiler of a collection.

tr[anslator] note added by the translator of a text.

transcr[iber] note added by the transcriber of a text into electronic form.

(initials) note added by the individual indicated by the initials.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* For specialized types of editorial annotation (e.g. for marking corrections, normalizations, cruxes, etc.), see chapter 19 *Critical Apparatus*.

**place** indicates where the note appears in the source text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

foot note appears at foot of page.

end note appears at end of chapter or volume.

inline note appears as a marked paragraph in the body of the text.

left note appears in left margin.

right note appears in right margin.

interlinear note appears between lines of the text.

app[aratus] note appears in the apparatus at the foot of the page.

*Default* 'unspecified'

*Note* For pages with multiple apparatus, values such as *app1* and *app2* can be used.

The place attribute can be used to indicate to text formatting software where a note should be printed. If the locations indicated do not agree with those in the copy text, that fact should be indicated in the TEI header.

**anchored** indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

*Datatype* (yes | no)

*Legal values are:*

yes copy text indicates the place of attachment for the note.

no copy text indicates no place of attachment for the note.

*Default* yes

*Note* In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. “page 218, lines 3–4”). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. If the specific symbols used are to be recorded, use the `n` attribute.

**target** indicates the point of attachment of a note, or the beginning of the span to which the note is attached.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* reference to the ids of element(s) which begin at the location in question (e.g. the id of an <anchor> element).

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If target and targetEnd are to be used to indicate where notes attach to the text, then elements at the appropriate locations (<anchor> elements if necessary) must be given id values to be pointed at.

**targetEnd** points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* reference to the id(s) of element(s) which end at the location(s) in question, or to an empty element at the point in question.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the painterly  
 <note resp="Tr"><term lang="de">Malerisch</term>.  
 This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. (Tr.)</note>  
 style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this psychological significance.

*Note* The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family during the second half of the eleventh century,

<note n="126" anchored="yes">

The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54.

</note>

is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann. However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Declared in file dummy; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* notes; biblPart; terminologyInclusions; dictionaryTopLevel

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument bibl biblStruct body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hom hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl monogr mood note notesStmt number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg re ref region rendition seg sense set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech termEntry tig title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

<!ELEMENT note %om.R0; %specialPara;>

```

<!ATTLIST note
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA #IMPLIED
  place CDATA ""unspecified""
  anchored (yes | no) "yes"
  target IDREFS #IMPLIED
  targetEnd IDREFS #IMPLIED>

```

See further 6.8.1 *Notes and Simple Annotation*; 5.2.6 *The Notes Statement*; 6.10.2.5 *Notes and Other Additional Information*; 12.3.5.4 *Notes within Entries*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*

**<notesStmt>** (Notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```

<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>

```

*Note* Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* note

*May occur within* biblFull fileDesc

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT notesStmt %om.R0; (note+)>
<!ATTLIST notesStmt
  %a.global;>

```

See further 5.2.6 *The Notes Statement*; 5.2 *The File Description*

**<null>** (Null value) represents the null set, bag, or list, depending on whether the org attribute of its parent <f> has the value set, bag, or list; has no interpretation if the org attribute of its parent <f> element has the value single.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from featureVal

*Example*

```

<f name="empty" org="list"><null/></f>

```

*Note* If the <null> element occurs as the value of a feature, it must be the only value. It is also a semantic error for the org attribute of that feature to have the value *single*.

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* featureVal

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT null %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST null
  %a.global;>

```

See further 16.6 *Singleton, Set, Bag and List Collections of Values*

**<num>** (number) contains a number, written in any form.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data)

**type** indicates the type of numeric value.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

cardinal absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5  
ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st  
fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three halves  
percentage e.g. ten percent

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

**value** supplies the value of the number in an application-dependent standard form.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any numeric value in the chosen standard form.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The standard form used should be described in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header. Standard forms may be defined from scratch, or borrowed from existing practice (e.g. “Standard values are given in the notation defined for numeric constants in the C language.”)

*Example*

```
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="1.5">1.5</num>
He stands <num type="cardinal" value="1.9">1 &middledot; 90</num>m. high.
```

*Note* Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents should use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 16 *Feature Structures*. The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socccStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT num %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST num
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED
    value CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.3 *Numbers and Measures*

**<number>** indicates grammatical number associated with a form, as given in a dictionary.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, morphInfo

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type=num>.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; morphInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT number %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST number
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*; 12.3.2 *Grammatical Information*

**<occasion>** a temporal expression (either a date or a time) given in terms of a named occasion such as a holiday, a named time of day, or some notable event.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

*Example*

```
In New York,
  <dateStruct value="01-01">
    <occasion type="holiday">New Years Day</occasion>
  </dateStruct> is the quietest of holidays,
  <dateStruct value="07-04">
    <occasion type="holiday">Independence Day</occasion>
  </dateStruct>
the most turbulent.
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT occasion %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST occasion
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;>
```

*See further* 20.4 *Dates and Time*

**<occupation>** contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from demographic)

**scheme** identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use by supplying the identifier of a <taxonomy> element elsewhere in the header.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must identify a <taxonomy> element

*Default* #IMPLIED

**code** identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the scheme attribute.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a <category> element

*Default #IMPLIED**Example*

```
<occupation>accountant</occupation>

<occupation scheme="rg" code="acc">accountant</occupation>

<occupation scheme="rg" code="acc">accountant
with specialist knowledge of oil industry
</occupation>
```

*Note* The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT occupation %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST occupation
  %a.global;
  scheme IDREF #IMPLIED
  code IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<offset>** (offset) that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from placePart, temporalExpr

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* placePart; temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* dateStruct placeName timeStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT offset %om.RR; ( #PCDATA | %m.Incl; )*>
<!ATTLIST offset
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;>
```

*See further* 20.2 *Place Names*

**<ofig>** (other-form information group) within a <tig> element, contains information elements relating to a single <otherForm>.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** classifies the other-form information group according to some convenient typology, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string identifying a class of <ofig>

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* A much fuller list of values for the type attribute may be generated from the dictionary of data element types under preparation as ISO TC 37/SC 3/WD 12 620, Computational Aids in Terminology. See ISO 12 620 for fuller details.

*Module* Declared in file teite2n; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology  
*Data Description* May contain an <otherForm> element and any data elements relating to the <otherForm> or to one of its related elements.

*May contain* addSpan admin alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan descrip fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap gram index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone otherForm pb respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* tig

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT ofig %om.R0;
  ((%m.terminologyMisc; | %m.Incl;)*, (otherForm, (gram | %m.Incl;)*),
  (%m.terminologyMisc;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST ofig
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 13.4.1 DTD Fragment for Nested Style; 13.2 Tags for Terminological Data

**<opener>** groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divtop

*Example*

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>

<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other
circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...</p>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divtop

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app argument byline c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline del delSpan distinct emph epigraph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s salute seg sic signed soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* back body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue group lg performance prologue

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT opener %om.R0; (#PCDATA | %m.phrase; | argument | byline |
  dateline | epigraph | salute | signed | %m.Incl;)* >
<!ATTLIST opener
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 7.2.4 Content of Textual Divisions; 7.2 Elements Common to All Divisions

**<oRef>** (orthographic-form reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to the orthographic form(s) of the headword.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, formPointers)

**type** indicates the kind of typographic modification made to the headword in the reference.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

cap indicates first letter is given as capital

nohyph indicates that the headword, though a prefix or suffix, loses its hyphen

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* formPointers; dictionaries

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education eg emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number oVar occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT oRef %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST oRef
  %a.global;
  %a.formPointers;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12.4 *Headword and Pronunciation References*

**<orgDivn>** (organizational division) indicates a division, branch or department specified in an organizational name.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** more fully describes the organization division specified in the name component. Possible values include “branch”, “department”, “section”, “division”, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

**reg** (regularization) gives a normalized or regularized form of the organizational division.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

*Example*

```
<orgName type="academic" key="DMHGU1">
  <orgDivn type="department">
    Department of Modern History
  </orgDivn>,
  Glasgow <orgType type="function">University</orgType></orgName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* orgName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT orgDivn %om.RR; %phrase.seq; >
<!ATTLIST orgDivn
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  reg CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 20.3 Organization names

**<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data)

**type** more fully describes the organization indicated in the organizational name. Possible values include “voluntary”, “political”, “governmental”, “industrial”, “commercial”, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values*

*Default* #IMPLIED

**key** provides an alternative identifier for the organization being named, such as a database record key.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or simply a more explicit name for the referent. Its purpose is only to record an identification; if the analysis leading to the identification is to be recorded as well, the analytic tags described in chapter 16 *Feature Structures* should be used in addition or instead.

**reg** (regularization) gives a normalized or regularized form of the organization name

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

*Example*

```
About a year back, a question of considerable
interest was agitated in the
<orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary" reg="Pennsylvania Abolition Society">
Pennsyla. Abolition Society</orgName>....
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* data

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition

docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT orgName %om.RR; ( #PCDATA | orgTitle | orgType |
                                orgDivn | %m.phrase; | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST orgName
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED
    key CDATA #IMPLIED
    reg CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 20.3 Organization names

**<orgTitle>** (organization title) contains the proper name component of an organizational name.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** more fully describes the organization title. Possible values include “formal”, “colloquial”, “acronym”, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

**reg** (regularization) gives a normalized or regularized form of the organization title.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

### Example

```
Mr Frost will be able to earn an extra fee from
<orgName type="media" key="BSB1">
  <orgTitle type="acronym">BSkyB</orgTitle>
</orgName>
rather than the <orgName type="media" key="BBC1">
  <orgTitle type="acronym" reg="British Broadcasting Corporation">BBC</orgTitle>
</orgName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* orgName

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT orgTitle %om.RR; %phrase.seq; >
<!ATTLIST orgTitle
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED
    reg CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 20.3 Organization names

**<orgType>** (organization type) indicates a part of the organization name which contains information about the organization's structure or function.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** more fully describes the organization type specified in the name component. Possible values include "function", "structure", etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

**reg** (regularization) gives a normalized or regularized form of the organization type

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

*Example*

```
<orgName type="utility company" key="WWPC1">Washington
<orgType type="function">Water Power</orgType>
  <orgType type="structure" reg="incorporated">Inc.</orgType>
</orgName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* orgName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT orgType %om.RR; %phrase.seq; >
<!ATTLIST orgType
  %a.g1oba1;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  reg CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 20.3 Organization names

**<orig>** (original form) contains the original form of a reading, for which a regularized form is given in an attribute value.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**reg** (regularization) gives a regularized (normalized) form of the text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsibility) identifies the individual responsible for the regularization of the word or phrase.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters, typically the initials of the individual involved, or a role identifier like 'editor' if not known by name.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT orig %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST orig
  %a.global;
  reg CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 6.5.2 Regularization and Normalization; 19 Critical Apparatus

**<orth>** (orthographic form) gives the orthographic form of a dictionary headword.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, formInfo)

**type** gives the type of spelling.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any convenient word or phrase, e.g. ‘lat’ (latinate), ‘std’ (standard), ‘trans’ (transliterated), etc.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**extent** gives the extent of the orthographic information provided.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

full full form

pref prefix

suff suffix

part partial

*Default* full

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; formInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xpTr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree form trans

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT orth %om.R0; %paraContent;>
```

```

<!ATTLIST orth
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  extent CDATA "full">

```

See further 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<otherForm>** (other form) contains an alternate designation for the concept treated by the term entry, such as a synonym.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** classifies the <otherForm> using some typology, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters; for serious terminological work, values should be taken from the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* In nested term entries, the <otherForm> belongs to the same terminological information group as the term for which it is an alternate.

*Module* Declared in file teite2n; Declared in file teite2f; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ofig

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT otherForm %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST otherForm
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

See further 13.4.2 *DTD Fragment for Flat Style*; 13.4.1 *DTD Fragment for Nested Style*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*

**<oVar>** (orthographic-variant reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to variant orthographic form(s) of the headword.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, formPointers)

**type** indicates the kind of variant involved.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

```

pt  past tense
pp  past participle
prp present participle
f   feminine
pl  plural

```

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* formPointers; dictionaries

*Data Description* Character data or <oRef>.

*May contain* #PCDATA oRef

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
docImprint domain edition editor education eg emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker  
sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr  
trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT oVar %om.RR; (#PCDATA | oRef)*>
<!ATTLIST oVar
  %a.global;
  %a.formPointers;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12 *Print Dictionaries*

**<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from chunk

*Example*

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside.
<q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
<q>What have you done?</q>
</p>
<p><q>I have now arranged that you can be
married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.</p>
<p><q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is
dead,</q> she said.</p>
<p><q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf.
  <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q>
</p>
```

*Note* In some contexts, the paragraph may have a specialized meaning, e.g. in the tag set for dictionaries, <p> is used to enclose any running text, and thus does not imply text set off as is conventionally done in running prose.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* chunk

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption  
castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign  
formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp  
list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr  
placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech  
term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* add argument availability body broadcast castList corr correction div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5  
div6 div7 editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc epigraph epilogue equipment figure hyphenation interpretation item  
langUsage metDecl normalization note particDesc particLinks performance person personGrp projectDesc prologue  
publicationStmt q quotation quote recording recordingStmt refsDecl samplingDecl scriptStmt segmentation seriesStmt  
set setting settingDesc sic sourceDesc sp stage stdVals view

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT p %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST p
  %a.global;>
```

See further 6.1 Paragraphs; 10.2.4 Speech Contents

**<page>** marks pages in a reference edition.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<(La)page n="32"> <!-- text of edition La, page 32 --></(La)page>
<(La)page n="33"> <!-- text of edition La, page 33 --> </(La)page>
<(La)page n="34"> <!-- text of edition La, page 34 --> </(La)page>
<(La)page n="35"> <!-- text of edition La, page 35 --> </(La)page>
```

*Note* The **<page>** element in a concurrent page-reference DTD may be subdivided into columns or lines if desired, or left unanalysed.

*Module* Declared in file teipl2; Auxiliary tag set for concurrent markup of pages and lines

*Data Description* May contain **<col>** elements, **<line>** elements, or character data.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT page %om.R0; (#PCDATA | line | col)*>
<!ATTLIST page
  %a.global;>
```

See further 31.6 Concurrent Markup for Pages and Lines

**<parents>** lists elements which can directly contain this element.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<parents>head, title</parents>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* a list of valid element names separated by commas or spaces.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT parents %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST parents
  %a.global;>
```

See further 27.1 The TagDoc Documentation Element

**<part>** specifies the module or part to which a particular element, element class, or entity belongs in a modular encoding scheme such as the TEI.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** indicates whether the tag set is a base, additional, core, or auxiliary tag set.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

core a core tag set (part of every document)

base a base tag set

add an additional tag set

aux an auxiliary tag set

*Default* #IMPLIED

**name** indicates the specific tag set or part in question, usually by means of an identifier or short form.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<part type="base" name="dict">Base tag set for
dictionaries enabled by TEI.dictionaries</part>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* A descriptive phrase identifying the module concerned.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT part %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST part
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  name CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*; 27.2 *Element Classes*

**<particDesc>** (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in a linguistic interaction.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Example*

```
<particDesc>
  <person id="p1" sex="f" age="42">
    <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in Shropshire
    UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation.
    Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
  </person>
  <person id="p2" sex="m" age="43"/>
  <particLinks>
    <relation type="personal" desc="spouse" active="p1 p2" mutual="Y"/>
  </particLinks>
</particDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* declarable

*Data Description* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

*May contain* p particLinks person personGrp

*May occur within* profileDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT particDesc %om.R0; ( p+ |
  ( (person | personGrp)+, particLinks? ) ) >
<!ATTLIST particDesc
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 23.2 *Contextual Information*; 5.4 *The Profile Description*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<particLinks>** (participant relationships) describes the relationships or social links existing between participants in a linguistic interaction.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<particLinks>
  <relation type="personal" desc="parent" active="p1 p2" passive="p3 p4" mutual="N"/>
  <relation type="personal" desc="spouse" active="p1 p2" mutual="Y"/>
  <relation type="social" desc="employer" active="p1" passive="p3 p5 p6 p7" mutual="N"/>
</particLinks>

<particLinks>
  <p>The persons with ids P1 and P2 are the parents of
  P3 and P4. P1 and P2 are married to each other.
  P1 is the employer of P3, P5., P6, and P7.</p>
</particLinks>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements.

*May contain* p relation

*May occur within* particDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT particLinks %om.R0; (p+ | relation+) >
<!ATTLIST particLinks
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<pause>** a pause either between or within utterances.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.spoken, timed)

**type** categorizes the pause in some respect.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* An open list

*Default* #IMPLIED

**who** supplies an identifier for the person or group pausing. Its value is the identifier of a <participant> or <participant.grp> element in the TEI header.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a participant or participant group within the TEI Header

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<pause dur="42" type="pregnant"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teispok2; Base tag set for Transcribed Speech: enabled by TEI.spoken

*Class* comp.spoken; timed

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set u

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT pause %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST pause
    %a.global;
    %a.timed;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED
    who IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 11.2.7 *Formal Definition*; 11.2 *Elements Unique to Spoken Texts*; 11.2.2 *Pause*

**<pb>** (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from refsys)

**ed** (edition) indicates the edition or version in which the page break is located at this point

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<pb n="123" ed="Riverside"/>
```

*Note* On this element, the global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows the point of insertion of this <pb>. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with page breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the page or the page number or signature printed on it. By convention, <pb> elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* refsys

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT pb %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST pb
  %a.global;
  ed CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.9.3 Milestone Tags

**<per>** (person) contains an indication of the grammatical person (1st, 2nd, 3rd, etc.) associated with a given inflected form in a dictionary.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, morphInfo

*Note* This element is synonymous with <gram type="person">.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* morphInfo; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT per %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST per
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 Information on Written and Spoken Forms

**<performance>** contains a section of front or back matter describing how a dramatic piece is to be performed in general or how it was performed on some specific occasion.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dramafront

*Example*

```
<performance>
  <p>
    <rs type="place">Gateway Theatre, Edinburgh</rs>,
    <date>6 September 1948</date>
    <castList>
      <castItem> <role>Anath Bithiah</role>
```

```

        <actor>Athene Seyler</actor>
        <!-- ... -->
    </castItem>
    <castItem> <role>Shendi</role>
        <actor>Robert Rietty</actor>
    </castItem>
</castList>
</p>
<p>Directed by <name>E. Martin Browne</name></p>
</performance>

```

```

<performance>
<p>Cast of the original production at the
<rs type="place">Savoy Theatre, London,</rs>
on <date>September 24, 1907</date>
<castList>
    <castItem>Colonel Hope : Mr A.E.George</castItem>
    <!-- ... -->
</castList>
</p>
</performance>

```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* dramafront

*Data Description* contains paragraphs and an optional cast list only.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* back front

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT performance %om.RR; ((%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*,
    (%component;), (%m.Incl;)*)+, ((%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)*>
<!ATTLIST performance
    %a.g1obal;>

```

*See further* 10.1.3 Records of Performances; 10.1 Front and Back Matter

**<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including any or all of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, demographic, names)

**type** describes the personal name more fully using an open-ended list of words or phrases which help to indicate the function, e.g. "married name", "maiden name", "pen name", "religious name", etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```

<persName>
    <foreName>Edward</foreName>
    <foreName>George</foreName>
    <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>,
    <roleName>Baron Lytton of
        <placeName>Knebworth</placeName></roleName>
</persName>

```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* demographic; names; data

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addName addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreName foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap genName geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name nameLink num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore roleName rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied surname term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName person personGrp phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT persName %om.RR; ( #PCDATA | %m.personPart;
| %m.phrase; | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST persName
    %a.global;
    %a.names;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 20.1 *Personal Names*

**<person>** describes a single participant in a language interaction.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**role** specifies the role of this participant in the group.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a set of keywords to be defined

*Default* #IMPLIED

**sex** specifies the sex of the participant.

*Datatype* ( m | f | u )

*Legal values are:*

m male

f female

u unknown or inapplicable

*Default* #IMPLIED

**age** specifies the age group to which the participant belongs.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* suggested values are to be supplied

*Default* #IMPLIED

#### Example

```
<person id="p1" sex="f" age="42">
  <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in Shropshire
  UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation.
  Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
</person>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination.

*May contain* affiliation birth education firstLang langKnown occupation p persName residence socecStatus

*May occur within* particDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT person %om.R0; (p+ | (%m.demographic;)* )>
<!ATTLIST person
  %a.global;
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  sex ( m | f | u ) #IMPLIED
  age CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<personGrp>** (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**role** specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a set of keywords to be defined

*Default* #IMPLIED

**sex** specifies the sex of the participant group.

*Datatype* ( m | f | u | x )

*Legal values are:*

m	male
f	female
u	unknown
x	mixed

*Default* #IMPLIED

**age** specifies the age group of the participants.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* suggested values are to be supplied

*Default* #IMPLIED

**size** specifies the size or approximate size of the group.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* may contain a number and an indication of accuracy, e.g. 'approx 200'

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<personGrp id="pg1" role="audience" sex="x" size="approx 50"/>
```

*Note* The global id attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the who attribute is specified on individual utterances.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination.

*May contain* affiliation birth education firstLang langKnown occupation p persName residence socecStatus

*May occur within* particDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT personGrp %om.R0; (p+ | (%m.demographic;)* )>
<!ATTLIST personGrp
  %a.global;
  role CDATA #IMPLIED
  sex ( m | f | u | x ) #IMPLIED
  age CDATA #IMPLIED
  size CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<phr>** (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from seg

*Example*

```
<phr type="verb" function="extraposted modifier">To talk
<phr type="preposition" function="complement">of
<phr type="noun" function="object">many things</phr>
  </phr>
</phr>
```

*Module* Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

*Class* seg

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT phr %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST phr
  %a.global;
  %a.seg;>
```

*See further* 15.1 *Linguistic Segment Categories*

**<placeName>** (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from data, names

*Example*

```
<placeName>
  <settlement>Rochester</settlement>
  <region>New York</region>
</placeName>

<placeName>
  <geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName>
  <region>Argylshire</region>
</placeName>

<placeName>
  <distance>10 miles</distance>
  <offset>Northeast of</offset>
  <settlement>Attica</settlement>
</placeName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* names; data

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bloc c caesura cb certainty cl corr country damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distance distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geog geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar offset orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg region respons restore rs s seg settlement sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT placeName %om.RR; ( #PCDATA | %m.placePart;
                               | %m.phrase; | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST placeName
    %a.global;
    %a.names;>
```

*See further* 20.2 Place Names

**<plus>** (Binary plus value) provides binary plus value for a feature.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from binary

**Example**

```
<f name="strident"><plus/></f>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* binary

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT plus %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST plus
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 16.2 Elementary Feature Structures: Features with Binary Values

**<pos>** (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a dictionary headword (noun, verb, adjective, etc.)

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, gramInfo

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; gramInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distance distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT pos %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST pos
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;>
```

See further 12.3.2 *Grammatical Information*

**<postBox>** (postBox) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from addrPart

*Example*

```
<postBox>P.O. Box 280</postBox>
```

```
<postBox>Postbus 532</postBox>
```

*Note* The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* addrPart

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* address

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT postBox %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST postBox
    %a.global;>
```

See further 6.4.2 *Addresses*

**<postCode>** (postCode) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from addrPart

*Example*

```
<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>
```

```
<postCode>60142-7</postCode>
```

*Note* The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* addrPart

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* address

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT postCode %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST postCode
    %a.global;>
```

See further 6.4.2 *Addresses*

**<pRef>** (pronunciation reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to the pronunciation(s) of the headword.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, formPointers

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* formPointers; dictionaries

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
 byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
 damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
 docImprint domain edition editor education eg emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
 foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
 item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num  
 number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p pVar per persName phr  
 placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
 resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker  
 sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr  
 trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT pRef %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST pRef
  %a.global;
  %a.formPointers;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.4 *Headword and Pronunciation References*

**<preparedness>** describes the extent to which a text may be regarded as prepared or spontaneous.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** a keyword characterizing the type of preparedness.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

- none spontaneous or unprepared
- scripted follows a script
- formulaic follows a predefined set of conventions
- revised polished or revised before presentation

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<preparedness type="none"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date  
 dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss  
 handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef  
 oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span  
 spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* textDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT preparedness %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST preparedness
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<principal>** (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<principal>Gary Taylor</principal>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* titleStmnt

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT principal %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST principal
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.2.1 *The Title Statement*

**<profileDesc>** (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

**Example**

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language wsd="FRA">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* creation handList langUsage particDesc settingDesc textClass textDesc

*May occur within* teiHeader

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT profileDesc %om.RR; (creation?, langUsage*,
textDesc*,particDesc*, settingDesc*, handList*, textClass*)>
<!ATTLIST profileDesc
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.4 *The Profile Description*; 5.1.1 *The TEI Header and Its Components*

**<projectDesc>** (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

**Example**

```
<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare
  Clinic, June 1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT projectDesc %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST projectDesc
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 5.3.1 *The Project Description*; 5.3 *The Encoding Description*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<prologue>** contains the prologue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dramafront

*Example*

```
<prologue>
  <sp>
    <l>Wits, like physicians never can agree,</l>
    <l>When of a different society.</l>
    <!-- ... -->
    <l>New plays are stuffed with wits, and with deboches,</l>
    <l>That crowd and sweat like cits in May-Day coaches.</l>
  </sp>
  <trailer>Written by a person of quality</trailer>
</prologue>
```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* dramafront

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor argument bibl biblFull biblStruct byline camera caption castList cb certainty cit closer dateline delSpan docAuthor docDate eTree entry entryFree epigraph event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note opener p pause pb q quote respons salute shift signed sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline trailer tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* back front

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT prologue %om.RR; ((%m.divtop; | %m.Incl;)*,
  (%component;), (%m.Incl;)*), (%m.divbot;), (%m.Incl;)*)>
<!ATTLIST prologue
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 10.1.2 *Prologues and Epilogues*; 10.1 *Front and Back Matter*

**<pron>** (pronunciation) contains the pronunciation(s) of the word.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, formInfo)

**extent** indicates whether the pronunciation is for whole word or part.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

full full form

pref prefix

suff suffix

part partial

*Default* full

*Note*

**notation** indicates what notation is used for the pronunciation, if more than one occurs in the machine-readable dictionary.

*Datatype* CDATA  
*Values* Sample values: IPA, Murray, ...  
*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>obverse</orth>
    <pron>&ACCENT;&auml;l;b-&accent;v&schwa;rs</pron>,
    <pron extent="prefix">&auml;l;b-&ACCENT;</pron>,
    <pron extent="prefix">&schwa;b-&ACCENT;</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <!-- ... -->
</entry>
<!-- Webster's Collegiate, obverse 2 -->
```

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; formInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree form trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT pron %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST pron
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;
  extent CDATA "full"
  notation CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<ptr>** defines a pointer to another location in the current document in terms of one or more identifiable elements.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from loc, pointer, terminologyInclusions)

**target** specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying the values used on the id attribute of one or more other elements in the current document

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* One or more valid identifiers, separated by white space.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```
<ptr type="s" resp="LB" target="p2 p5"/>
<ptr type="defn" target="d1"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* loc; pointer; terminologyInclusions

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation altGrp author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyp

imprimatur interaction item itype joinGrp l label lang langKnown language lbl lem linkGrp locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term termEntry tig time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT ptr %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST ptr
  %a.global;
  %a.pointer;
  target IDREFS #REQUIRED>
```

See further 6.6 Simple Links and Cross References; 14.1 Pointers

**<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

#### Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date value="1846"></date>
</publicationStmt>

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability><p>Available under licence only</p></availability>
  <date value="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

*Note* Although not enforced by the DTD, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* addSpan address alt altGrp anchor authority availability cb certainty date delSpan distributor fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap idno index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone p pb pubPlace publisher respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* biblFull fileDesc

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT publicationStmt %om.R0;
( ( p, (%m.Incl;)* )+
  | ( (publisher | distributor | authority | pubPlace | address | idno
      | availability | date ), (%m.Incl;)* )+ )>
<!ATTLIST publicationStmt
  %a.global;>
```

See further 5.2.4 Publication, Distribution, etc.; 5.2 The File Description

**<publisher>** provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

#### Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*Data Description* Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* bibl docImprint imprint publicationStmt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT publisher %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST publisher
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.10.2.3 *Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details*; 5.2.4 *Publication, Distribution, etc.*

**<pubPlace>** contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart, names

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* names; biblPart

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* bibl docImprint imprint publicationStmt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT pubPlace %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST pubPlace
    %a.global;
    %a.names;>
```

*See further* 6.10.2.3 *Imprint, Pagination, and Other Details*

**<purpose>** characterizes a single purpose or communicative function of the text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** specifies a particular kind of purpose.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

persuade didactic, advertising, propaganda, etc.  
 express self expression, confessional, etc.  
 inform convey information, educate, etc.  
 entertain amuse, entertain, etc.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**degree** specifies the extent to which this purpose predominates.

*Datatype* (high | medium | low | unknown)

*Legal values are:*

high this purpose is predominant  
 medium this purpose is intermediate  
 low this purpose is weak  
 unknown extent unknown

### Default #IMPLIED

#### Example

```
<purpose type="persuade" degree="high"></purpose>
<purpose type="entertain" degree="low"></purpose>
```

**Module** Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

**Data Description** Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose

**May contain** #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

**May occur within** textDesc

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT purpose %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST purpose
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  degree (high | medium | low | unknown) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<pVar>** (pronunciation-variant reference) in a dictionary example, indicates a reference to variant pronunciation(s) of the headword.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, formPointers

**Module** Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

**Class** formPointers; dictionaries

**Data Description** Character data or phrase-level elements.

**May contain** #PCDATA pRef

**May occur within** ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education eg emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT pVar %om.RR; (#PCDATA | pRef)*>
<!ATTLIST pVar
  %a.global;
  %a.formPointers;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12 *Print Dictionaries*

**<q>** (quoted speech or thought) contains a quotation or apparent quotation — a representation of speech or thought marked as being quoted from someone else (whether in fact quoted or not); in narrative, the words are usually those of a character or speaker; in dictionaries, <q> may be used to mark real or contrived examples of usage.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from hqinter)

**type** may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

**spoken** representation of direct speech, usually marked by quotation marks.

**thought** representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**direct** may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.

*Datatype* (y | n | unspecified)

*Legal values are:*

**y** speech or thought is represented directly.

**n** speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect.

**unspecified** no claim is made.

*Default* unspecified

**who** identifies the speaker of a piece of direct speech.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* may be an idref

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

And so, as Tiny Tim observed,

```
<q type="speech">God Bless Us, Every One!</q>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqinter

*May contain* #PCDATA ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xpr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell cit colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition eg emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT q %om.RR; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST q
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  direct (y | n | unspecified) "unspecified"
  who CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.3.3 Quotation

**<quotation>** specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from declarable)

**marks** indicates whether or not quotation marks have been retained as content within the text.

*Datatype* ( none | some | all )

*Legal values are:*

none no quotation marks have been retained  
some some quotation marks have been retained  
all all quotation marks have been retained

*Default* all

**form** specifies how quotation marks are indicated within the text.

*Datatype* (data | rend | std | nonstd | unknown)

*Legal values are:*

data quotation marks are retained as data.

rend the rendition attribute is consistently used to indicate the form of quotation marks.

std use of quotation marks has been standardized.

nonstd quotation marks are represented inconsistently.

unknown use of quotation marks is unknown.

*Default* unknown

*Example*

```
<quotation marks="none" form="rend">
  <p>No quote marks have been retained. Instead, the rendition
  attribute on the Q element is used to specify what kinds of
  quote mark was used, according to the following list:
  <list type="gloss">
    <label>dq</label>
    <item>double quotes open and close</item>
    <label>sq</label>
    <item>single quotes open and close</item>
    <label>dash</label>
    <item>long dash open</item>
    <label>dg</label>
    <item>double guillemets open and close</item>
  </list></p>
</quotation>x
```

```
<quotation marks="all" form="std">
  <p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are
  represented by standard entity references
  </p></quotation>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* editorialDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT quotation %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST quotation
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;
  marks ( none | some | all ) "all"
  form (data | rend | std | nonstd | unknown) "unknown">
```

*See further* 5.3.3 *The Editorial Practices Declaration*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<quote>** (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from hqinter

*Example*

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized
in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
keeps</quote>
  <ref target="fi57">(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

*Note* If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqinter

*May contain* #PCDATA ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell cit colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition eg emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT quote %om.RR; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST quote
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.3.3 Quotation; 7.3 Groups of Texts

**<rate>** (rate value) provides a rate value or range of values for a feature.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from singleVal)

**value** provides a numeric value.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A real number or integer.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**valueTo** together with value attribute, provides a numeric range of values.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A real number or integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**unit** provides a unit for a rate feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A string, e.g. *meter*.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**per** provides an interval for a rate feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A string, e.g. *second*.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**rel** indicates the relation of the given value or range to the actual value or range.

*Datatype* (eq|ne|gt|ge|lt|le)

*Legal values are:*

eq indicates that the actual value or range is that given.

ne indicates that the actual value or range is not the value or range given by the element.

lt indicates that the actual value or range is less than the given value or range.

le indicates that the actual value or range is less than or equal to the given value or range.

- gt indicates that the actual value or range is greater than the given value or range.
- ge indicates that the actual value or range is greater than or equal to the given value or range.

*Default* eq

**type** indicates whether value is to be understood as real or integer.

*Datatype* (int|real)

*Legal values are:*

- int specifies that value is an integer; if noninteger is given as value of value, then only integer part is used.
- real specifies that value is that of a real number.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<rate value="65" unit="mile" per="hour" rel="gt"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* singleVal

*Data Description* Empty tag.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT rate %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST rate
  %a.global;
  value CDATA #REQUIRED
  valueTo CDATA #IMPLIED
  unit CDATA #IMPLIED
  per CDATA #REQUIRED
  rel (eq|ne|gt|ge|lt|le) "eq"
  type (int|real) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 16.4 Symbolic, Numeric, Measurement, Rate and String Values

**<rdg>** (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from readings

*Example*

```
<rdg wit="Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* readings

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lacunaEnd lacunaStart lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail witEnd witStart xptr xref

*May occur within* app rdgGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT rdg %om.RO; ( #PCDATA | %m.phrase; | %m.inter; |
  %m.Incl; | %m.fragmentary; )* >
<!ATTLIST rdg
  %a.global;
  %a.readings;>
```

*See further* 19.1 The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses

**<rdgGrp>** (reading group) within a textual variation, groups two or more readings perceived to have a genetic relationship or other affinity.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from readings

*Example*

```
<app>
  <lem wit="E1 Ra2">though</lem>
  <rdgGrp type="orthographic">
    <rdg wit="Hg">thogh</rdg>
    <rdg wit="La">thouhe</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>
```

*Note* Note that only one <lem> element may appear within a single apparatus entry, whether it appears outside a <rdgGrp> element or within it.

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* readings

*Data Description* May contain readings and nested reading groups.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb rdg rdgGrp respons span spanGrp timeline wit

*May occur within* app rdgGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT rdgGrp %m.R0; ((%m.Incl;)*, ( (rdgGrp, (%m.Incl;)*
| (rdg, (%m.Incl;)*, (wit, (%m.Incl;)*?) )+ ) >
<!ATTLIST rdgGrp
  %a.global;
  %a.readings;>
```

*See further* 19.1 *The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses*

**<re>** (related entry) contains a dictionary entry for a lexical item related to the headword, such as a compound phrase or derived form, embedded inside a larger entry.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel)

**type** classifies the related entry according to any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* The following example from *Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary* (Springfield, Mass.: G. & C. Merriam Company, 1975) shows a single related entry for which no definition is given, since its meaning is held to be readily derivable from the root entry:

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>neu&middledot;ra1</orth>
    <pron>&STRESS;n(y)&udot;r-&schwa;l</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>of, relating to, or affecting a nerve or the
      nervous system</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2"> ... </sense>
  <re><form>
    <orth>neurally</orth>
    <pron extent="suffix">-&schwa;-l&emacr;</pron>
  </form>
```

```

    <gramGrp>
      <pos>adv</pos>
    </gramGrp>
  </re>
</entry>

```

The following example from *Diccionario de la Universidad de Chicago Inglés-Español y Español-Inglés / The University of Chicago Spanish Dictionary*, Fourth Edition, compiled by Carlos Castillo and Otto F. Bond (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987) shows a number of related entries embedded in the main entry. The original entry resembles the following:

**abeja** [a·bé·xa] *f.* bee; **abejera** [a·be·xé·ra] *f.* beehive; **abejón** [a·be·xóon] *m.* drone; bumblebee; **abejorro** [a·be·xó·tro] *m.* bumble bee.

One encoding for this entry would be:

```

<entry>
  <form><orth>abeja</orth></form>
  <gramGrp><gen>f. </gen></gramGrp>
  <sense n="1.">
<usg type="domain"> (ento.) </usg>
<def> bee </def>.
  </sense>
  <sense n="2.">
<def> busy bee, hard worker </def>.
  </sense>
  <sense n="3.">
<usg orig="A." type="domain"> (astron.) </usg>,
<def> Musca </def> &mdash;
  </sense>
  <re><form>
<orth orig="a. albanila"> abeja albanila </orth>,
  </form>
  <sense><def>mason bee</def>;</sense>
  </re>
  <re><form>
  <orth orig="a. carpintera">
  abeja carpintera </orth>,
  </form>
<sense><def>carpenter bee </def>;</sense>
  </re>
  <re><form>
  <orth id="o1" orig="a. reina or maestra">
  abeja reina </orth>
  <orth mergedin="o1"> abeja maestra </orth>
  </form>
<sense><def> queen bee </def>;</sense>
  </re>
  <re><form>
  <orth id="o2" orig="a. neutra or obrera">
  abeja neutra </orth>
  <orth mergedin="o2"> abeja obrera </orth>
  </form>
<sense><def>worker bee</def>.</sense>
  </re>
</entry>

```

In the much larger Simon & Schuster Spanish-English dictionary,<sup>177</sup> these derived forms of ‘abeja’ are treated as separate main entries, but there are other embedded phrases shown as <re>s in its main entry for ‘abeja’:

abeja, *f.* 1. (ento.) bee. 2. busy bee, hard worker. 3. (astron.) A., Musca. — a. albanila, mason bee; a. carpintera, carpenter bee; a. reina or maestra, queen bee; a. neutra or obrera, worker bee.

This entry may be encoded thus:

```

<entry>
<form>

```

<sup>177</sup> Tana de Gámez, ed., *Simon and Schuster's International Dictionary* (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1973).

```

    <orth> abeja </orth>
    <gramGrp>
      <gen> f. </gen>
    </gramGrp>
  </form>
  <sense n="1.">
    <usg type="domain"> (ento.) </usg>
    <def> bee </def>.
  </sense>
  <sense n="2.">
    <def> busy bee, hard worker </def>.
  </sense>
  <sense n="3.">
    <usg orig="A." type="domain"> (astron.) </usg>,
    <def> Musca </def> &mdash;
  </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth orig="a. albanila"> abeja albanila </orth>,
    </form>
    <sense>
      <def> mason bee </def>; </sense>
  </re>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth orig="a. carpintera">
        abeja carpintera </orth>,
    </form>
    <sense>
      <def> carpenter bee </def>; </sense>
  </re>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth id="o1" orig="a. reina or maestra">
        abeja reina </orth>
      <orth mergedin="o1"> abeja maestra </orth>
    </form>
    <sense>
      <def> queen bee </def>; </sense>
  </re>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth id="o2" orig="a. neutra or obrera">
        abeja neutra </orth>
      <orth mergedin="o2"> abeja obrera </orth>
    </form>
    <sense>
      <def> worker bee </def> . </sense>
  </re>
</entry>

```

*Note* Identical in sub-elements to an <entry> tag, and used where a dictionary has embedded information inside one entry which could have formed a separate entry. Some authorities distinguish related entries, run-on entries, and various other types of degenerate entries; no such typology is attempted here.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictiona

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct def del delSpan dictScrap distinct eg emph etym expan fLib foreign form formula fs fLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss gramGrp handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr re ref reg

respons restore rs s seg sense sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title  
trans unclear usg w xptr xr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree hom re sense trans

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT re %om.R0; ( #PCDATA | sense | %m.dictionaryTopLevel;  
| %m.phrase; | %m.Incl; )* >  
  
<!ATTLIST re  
%a.global;  
%a.dictionaries;  
type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12.3.6 *Related Entries*

**<recording>** (recording event) details of an audio or video recording event used as the source of a spoken text, either directly or from a public broadcast.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from declarable)

**type** the kind of recording.

*Datatype* (audio | video)

*Legal values are:*

audio audio recording

video audio and video recording

*Default* audio

**dur** the original duration of the recording.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Include the units, e.g. 30 min.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<recording type="audio" dur="30 min">  
  <equipment>  
    <p>Recorded on a Sony TR444 walkman by unknown participants; remastered  
      to digital tape at <placeName>Borehamwood Studios</placeName> by  
      <orgName>Transcription Services Inc</orgName>.</p>  
  </equipment>  
</recording>
```

```
<recording type="audio" dur="10 min">  
  <equipment>  
    <p>Recorded from FM Radio to digital tape</p>  
  </equipment>  
  <broadcast>  
    <bibl>  
      <title>Interview on foreign policy</title>  
      <author>BBC Radio 5</author>  
      <respStmt>  
        <resp>interviewer</resp>  
        <name>Robin Day</name>  
      </respStmt>  
      <respStmt>  
        <resp>interviewee</resp>  
        <name>Margaret Thatcher</name>  
      </respStmt>  
      <series>  
        <title>The World Tonight</title>  
      </series>  
      <note>First broadcast on  
        <date value="1989-11-27">27 Nov 89</date></note>  
    </bibl>  
  </broadcast>  
</recording>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* broadcast date equipment p respStmt

*May occur within* broadcast recordingStmt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT recording %om.RR; (p+ | (respStmt | equipment | broadcast |
date)*)>
<!ATTLIST recording
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;
  type (audio | video) "audio"
  dur CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 5.2.9 Computer Files Composed of Transcribed Speech; 23.3.2 Declarable Elements

**<recordingStmt>** (recording statement) describes a set of recordings used in transcription of a spoken text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* p recording

*May occur within* sourceDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT recordingStmt %om.RR; (p+ | recording+ )>
<!ATTLIST recordingStmt
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.2.9 Computer Files Composed of Transcribed Speech; 5.2.7 The Source Description

**<ref>** defines a reference to another location in the current document, in terms of one or more identifiable elements, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from loc, pointer, terminologyInclusions)

**target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying the value of the id attribute on one or more other elements in the current document.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* One or more valid identifiers, separated by white space.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<ref type="s" resp="LB" target="p2 p5">
See especially the second sentence</ref>.
See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* loc; pointer; terminologyInclusions

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation describ dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note

num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term termEntry tig time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT ref %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST ref
  %a.global;
  %a.pointer;
  target IDREFS #IMPLIED>
```

See further 6.6 Simple Links and Cross References; 13.2 Tags for Terminological Data

**<refsDecl>** (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**doctype** identifies the *document type* within which this reference declaration is used.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* must be the name of a document type

*Default* TEI.2

#### Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <step delim=":"
    from="DESCENDANT (1 div1 n %1)"
    refunit="chapter"/>
  <step delim=" "
    from="CHILD (1 head) STRING %2"
    length="6"
    refunit="chapterhead" />
  <step length="4"
    from="CHILD (ALL div2 n %3)"
    refunit="section" />
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

```
<refsDecl> <p>References are made up by concatenating
  the value for the <att>n</att> attribute on each <gi>div1</gi>
  element, followed by a colon, followed by the first six
  characters of the first <gi>head</gi> element found within it
  and a space, followed by exactly four characters derived from
  the value of the <att>n</att> attribute on the next included
  <gi>div2</gi> element. </refsDecl>
```

(This example presumes that local extensions to the TEI DTD have been made declaring the <gi> and <att> elements. It is hoped that future versions of these Guidelines will obviate the need for such an extension.)

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* p state step

*May occur within* encodingDesc

#### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT refsDecl %om.R0; (p+ | step+ | state+)>
<!ATTLIST refsDecl
  %a.global;
  doctype CDATA "TEI.2">
```

See further 5.3.5.3 Milestone Method; 5.3 The Encoding Description; 5.3.5 The Reference System Declaration

**<reg>** (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**orig** (original) gives the unregularized form of the text as found in the source copy.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <reg orig="auctoritee">Authority</reg>

**resp** (responsibility) identifies the individual responsible for the regularization of the word or phrase.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters, typically the initials of the individual involved, or a role identifier like 'editor' if not known by name.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The <reg> tag is mirrored by the <orig> tag, which allows the unnormalized form of the original to be retained as the content of the element, while still providing the opportunity to record the regularized or normalized form postulated by a researcher. The choice between the two elements is up to the encoder.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT reg %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST reg
  %a.global;
  orig CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.5.2 *Regularization and Normalization*; 19 *Critical Apparatus*

**<region>** (region) in an address, contains the state, province, county or region name; in a place name given as a hierarchy of geo-political units, the <region> is larger or administratively superior to the <settlement> and smaller or administratively less important than the <country>.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from names, placePart, typed

*Example*

```
<placeName>
  <region type="state" n="IL">Illinois</region>
</placeName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* placePart; names; typed

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* placeName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT region %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST region
  %a.global;
  %a.names;
  %a.typed;>
```

*See further* 20.2 Place Names

**<relation>** (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of participants.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** categorizes the relationship in some respect, e.g. as social, personal or other.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

social relationship concerned with social roles

personal relationship concerned with personal roles, e.g. kinship, marriage, etc.

other other kinds of relationship

*Default* personal

**desc** briefly describes the relationship.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* an open list of application-dependent keywords

*Default* #IMPLIED

**active** identifies the “active” participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

*Default* #IMPLIED

**passive** identifies the “passive” participants in a non-mutual relationship.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

*Default* #IMPLIED

**mutual** indicates whether the relationship holds equally amongst all the participants.

*Datatype* (Y | N)

*Legal values are:*

Y the relationship is mutual

N the relationship is directed

*Default* Y

*Example*

```
<relation type="social" desc="supervisor" active="p1" passive="p2 p3 p4" mutual="N"/>
```

```
<relation type="personal" desc="friends" active="p2 p3 p4" mutual="Y"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Data Description* Empty

*May occur within* particLinks

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT relation %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST relation
  %a.global;
  type CDATA "personal"
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED
  active IDREFS #IMPLIED
  passive IDREFS #IMPLIED
  mutual (Y | N) "Y">
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<remarks>** contains any commentary or discussion about the usage of an element, attribute, class, or entity not otherwise documented within the containing element.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<remarks>
<p>This element is probably redundant.</p></remarks>
```

*Note* As defined in ODD, must contain paragraphs; should be special para

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* Contains at least one paragraph, unless it is empty.

*May contain* bibl biblFull biblStruct cb cit gap index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT remarks %om.R0; (%component.seq;)>
<!ATTLIST remarks
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*; 27.1.1 *The AttList Documentation Element*; 27.2 *Element Classes*; 27.3 *Entity Documentation*

**<rendition>** (rendition) supplies information about the intended rendition of one or more elements.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Note* The present release of these Guidelines does not specify the content of this element in any further detail. It may be used to hold an description of the default rendition to be associated with the specified element, expressed in running prose, or in some more formal language such as CSS.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* tagsDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT rendition %om.R0; %paraContent; >
<!ATTLIST rendition
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.3.4 *The Tagging Declaration*

**<residence>** (residence) describes a person's present or past places of residence.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from demographic

*Example*

```
<residence>Childhood in East Africa, long term
resident of Glasgow, Scotland.</residence>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT residence %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
```

```
<!ATTLIST residence
```

```
%a.global;>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<resp>** contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* respStmt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT resp %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
```

```
<!ATTLIST resp
```

```
%a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.10.2.2 *Authors, Titles, and Editors*; 5.2.1 *The Title Statement*; 5.2.2 *The Edition Statement*; 5.2.5 *The Series Statement*

**<respons>** (responsibility) identifies the individual(s) responsible for some aspect of the markup of particular element(s).

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata)

**target** gives the identifier(s) of the element(s) for which some aspect of the responsibility is being assigned.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* one or more valid identifiers, separated by white space.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**locus** indicates the specific aspect of the markup for which responsibility is being assigned.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**#gi** responsibility for the claim that the element is of the type indicated by the markup

**#location** responsibility for the claim that the element begins and ends where indicated

**#startloc** responsibility for the claim that the element begins where indicated

**#endloc** responsibility for the claim that the element ends where indicated

**name** responsibility for the claim that the name attribute has the value given in the markup

**#transcribedContent** responsibility for the transcription of the element content

**#suppliedContent** responsibility for the contents supplied by the encoder (corrections, expansions of abbreviations, etc.)

*Default* #REQUIRED

**resp** identifies the individual or agency responsible for the indicated aspect of the electronic text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters, typically the initials of an individual, the acronym of an agency, the name of a computer program, etc.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**desc** (description) gives a brief prose note supplying any additional information which should be recorded

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters, typically a phrase or sentence in a natural language.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<respons target="p1" locus="#gi #location" resp="AR"/>
<respons target="p2" locus="rend" resp="LB"/>
```

*Note* The <respons> element is designed for cases in which fine-grained information about specific aspects of the markup of a text is desirable for whatever reason. Global responsibility for certain aspects of markup is usually more simply indicated in the TEI header, using the <respStmt> element within the title statement, edition statement, or change log.

*Module* Declared in file teicert2; Additional tag set for certainty: enabled by TEI.certainty

*Class* metadata

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT respons %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST respons
  %a.global;
  target IDREFS #REQUIRED
  locus CDATA #REQUIRED
  resp CDATA #REQUIRED
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 17.2 Attribution of Responsibility

**<respStmt>** (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for someone responsible for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

*Example*

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <name>Claus Huitfeldt</name>
</respStmt>

<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to SGML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone name pb resp respons span spanGrp timeline

*May occur within* analytic bibl change editionStmt monogr recording series seriesStmt titleStmt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT respStmt %om.R0; (resp | name | %m.Incl;)+ >
<!ATTLIST respStmt
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.10.2.2 *Authors, Titles, and Editors*; 5.2.1 *The Title Statement*; 5.2.2 *The Edition Statement*; 5.2.5 *The Series Statement*

**<restore>** indicates restoration of text to an earlier state by cancellation of an editorial or authorial marking or instruction.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**desc** (description) gives a prose description of the means of restoration.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any word or phrase, such as 'stet' or 'strike-down'.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the identification of the hand of the restoration.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**type** indicates the action cancelled by the restoration.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values*

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** (responsible) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for identifying the hand of the restoration.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the restoration.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Note* On this element, the type attribute indicates the action cancelled by the restoration. Its value should be the name of the tag contained within the <restore> element which is cancelled by the restoration. Most often, this will be <del>, but might also be <hi>, etc. In cases of simple nesting of a single cancelled action within the <restore> element this attribute will not be necessary.

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr  
*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT restore %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST restore
  %a.global;
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp IDREF %INHERITED;
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;>
```

*See further* 18.1.6 *Cancellation of Deletions and Other Markings*

**<revisionDesc>** (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<revisionDesc>
  <change><date>11 Nov 91</date>
    <respStmt><name>EB</name><resp>ed</resp></respStmt>
    <item>Deleted chapter 10</item>
  </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

*Note* Record changes with most recent changes at the top of the list.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* change list

*May occur within* teiHeader

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT revisionDesc %om.RR; (list | change+)>
<!ATTLIST revisionDesc
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.5 *The Revision Description*; 5.1.1 *The TEI Header and Its Components*

**<role>** the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<role id="jt">Joan Trash</role>
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>
```

*Note* It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this ID is referred to by who attributes on many other elements.

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* castItem

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT role %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST role
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 10.1.4 Cast Lists

**<roleDesc>** (role description) describes a character's role in a drama.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* castItem

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT roleDesc %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST roleDesc
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 10.1.4 Cast Lists

**<roleName>** (roleName) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from personPart

*Example*

```
<persName>
  <foreName>William</foreName>
  <surname>Poulteny</surname>
  <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName>
</persName>
```

*Note* A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* personPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss

handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef  
oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span  
spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpr xref

*May occur within* persName

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT roleName %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST roleName
    %a.global;
    %a.personPart;>
```

*See further* 20.1 *Personal Names*

**<root>** (root node) represents the root node of a tree.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**label** gives a label for a root node.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**value** provides the value of the root, which is a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* A valid identifier of a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**children** provides a list of identifiers of the elements which are the children of the root node.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* A list of valid identifiers.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If the root has no children (i.e., the tree is 'trivial'), then the children attribute must be omitted. For technical reasons, it cannot be specified as `<root children=' '>`.

**ord** indicates whether or not the root is ordered.

*Datatype* (Y | N)

*Legal values are:*

Y indicates that the children of the root are ordered.

N indicates that the children of the root are unordered.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Use if and only if ord=partial is specified on the `<tree>` tag and the root has more than one child.

**outDegree** gives the out degree of the root, the number of its children.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A nonnegative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The in degree of the root is always 0.

*Example*

```
<root id="vp1" label="VP" children="vb1 pn1" outDegree="2"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* tree

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT root %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST root
    %a.global;
    label CDATA #IMPLIED
    value IDREF #IMPLIED
    children IDREFS #IMPLIED
```

ord (Y | N) #IMPLIED  
outDegree CDATA #IMPLIED>

See further 21.2 Trees

**<row>** contains one row of a table.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**role** indicates the kind of information held in the cells of this row.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

label labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values.

*Default* data

*Note* The value specified is the default for all cells in this row.

*Example*

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifig2; Additional tag set for figures, tables and formulae: enabled by TEI.figures

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb cell certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp table timeline

*May occur within* table

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT row
%om.R0; ((cell|table), (%m.Incl;)*)+>
<!ATTLIST row
%a.global;
role CDATA "data">
```

See further 22.1.1 The TEI Table DTD

**<rs>** (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, names)

**type** indicates more specifically the object referred to by the referencing string. Values might include “person”, “place”, “ship”, “element” etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield
Park</rs> is let at last?</q>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data; names

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation

damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT rs %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST rs
  %a.global;
  %a.names;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 20.1 *Personal Names*; 6.4.1 *Referring Strings*

**<s>** (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from seg

*Example*

```
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

*Note* The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For other kinds of segmentation, the <seg> element should be used.

*Module* Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

*Class* seg

*Data Description* May contain character data, phrase-level and segmentation class elements, other than <s>.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xprr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT s %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST s
  %a.global;
  %a.seq;>
```

See further 15.1 *Linguistic Segment Categories*; 11.3.1 *Segmentation*

**<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divbot, divtop

*Example*

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the  
readinge.</salute>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divtop; divbot

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* back body castList closer div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue group lg opener performance prologue

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT salute %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>  
<!ATTLIST salute  
%a.global;>
```

*See further* 7.2.4 Content of Textual Divisions; 7.2.2 Openers and Closers

**<samplingDecl>** (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Note* This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT samplingDecl %om.R0; (p+)>  
<!ATTLIST samplingDecl  
%a.global;  
%a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 5.3.2 The Sampling Declaration; 5.3 The Encoding Description; 23.3.2 Declarable Elements

**<script>** contains a prose description of the script declared by a writing system declaration.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<writingSystemDeclaration lang="eng" id="ISO8859-1"  
name="//TEI P2: 1993//WSD ISO 8859-1: 1993//en"  
date="1993-06-01">  
<language iso639=' '>Various</language>  
<script>Latin script with diacritics.</script>  
<!-- ... -->  
</writingSystemDeclaration>  
  
<writingSystemDeclaration lang="eng" id="JPN"  
name="//TEI P2: 1993//WSD JIS 0208//en" date="1993-06-01">  
<language iso639="jpn">Modern Japanese</language>  
<script>normal Japanese, with mixture of hiragana, katakana,
```

```

        and kanji.</script>
      <!-- ... -->
    </writingSystemDeclaration>

```

*Note* This element is provided for the sake of clarity and readability. Strictly speaking, it is almost always redundant, as knowledgeable readers will know what script is involved as soon as they examine the base character set or the character repertoire.

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain character data only.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT script %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST script
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 25.3 *Describing the Writing System*

**<scriptStmt>** (script statement) contains a citation giving details of the script used for a spoken text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* bibl biblFull biblStruct p

*May occur within* sourceDesc

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT scriptStmt %om.RR; (p+ | bibl | biblFull | biblStruct)>
<!ATTLIST scriptStmt
  %a.global;
  %a.declarable;>

```

*See further* 5.2.9 *Computer Files Composed of Transcribed Speech*; 5.2.7 *The Source Description*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<second>** (second) the second component of a structured time-expression.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

*Example*

```

At the third stroke the time sponsored by Accurist
will be
<timeStruct value="1821:30">
  <hour>six</hour>
  <minute>twenty-one</minute> and
  <second>thirty</second> seconds
</timeStruct>

```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT second %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST second
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;>

```

*See further* 20.4 *Dates and Time*

**<seg>** (arbitrary segment) contains any arbitrary phrase-level unit of text (including other <seg> elements).

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from seg)

**subtype** provides a sub-categorization of the segment marked.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The subtype attribute may be used to provide any classification for the <seg> elements tagged in a text suitable for the type given.

*Example*

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

```
<s>
<seg rend="caps" type="typographic part-line">So father's only</seg>
glory was the ballfield.
</s>
```

```
<seg id="s1s3" type="preamble">
  <seg id="s1">Sigmund,
    <seg type="patronym">the son of Vołsung</seg>,
    was a king in Frankish country.</seg>
    <seg id="s2">Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
    <seg id="s3">Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg><!-- ... -->
</seg>
```

*Note* The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined — i.e. as a simple extension mechanism. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element — i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

*Module* Declared in file *teiling2.dtd*; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by *TEI.analysis*

*Class* *seg*

*Data Description* May contain anything which may appear within a paragraph.

*May contain* #PCDATA *abbr* *add* *addSpan* *address* *alt* *altGrp* *anchor* *app* *bibl* *biblFull* *biblStruct* *c* *caesura* *camera* *caption* *castList* *cb* *certainty* *cit* *cl* *corr* *damage* *date* *dateRange* *dateStruct* *del* *delSpan* *distinct* *emph* *expan* *fLib* *figure* *foreign* *formula* *fs* *fsLib* *fvLib* *fw* *gap* *geogName* *gloss* *handShift* *hi* *index* *interp* *interpGrp* *join* *joinGrp* *label* *lang* *lb* *link* *linkGrp* *list* *listBibl* *m* *measure* *mentioned* *milestone* *move* *name* *note* *num* *oRef* *oVar* *orgName* *orig* *pRef* *pVar* *pb* *persName* *phr* *placeName* *ptr* *q* *quote* *ref* *reg* *respons* *restore* *rs* *s* *seg* *sic* *soCalled* *sound* *space* *span* *spanGrp* *stage* *supplied* *table* *tech* *term* *text* *time* *timeRange* *timeStruct* *timeline* *title* *unclear* *view* *w* *witDetail* *xptr* *xref*

*May occur within* *ab* *abbr* *activity* *actor* *add* *addName* *addrLine* *admin* *affiliation* *author* *authority* *bibl* *biblScope* *birth* *bloc* *byline* *camera* *caption* *case* *castItem* *catDesc* *cell* *channel* *cl* *classCode* *closer* *colloc* *constitution* *corr* *country* *creation* *damage* *date* *dateRange* *def* *del* *derivation* *descrip* *dictScrap* *distance* *distinct* *distributor* *docAuthor* *docDate* *docEdition* *docImprint* *domain* *edition* *editor* *education* *emph* *entryFree* *etym* *expan* *extent* *factuality* *figDesc* *firstLang* *foreName* *foreign* *form* *funder* *fw* *gen* *genName* *gloss* *gram* *gramGrp* *head* *headItem* *headLabel* *hi* *hyph* *imprimatur* *interaction* *item* *itype* *l* *label* *lang* *langKnown* *language* *lbl* *lem* *locale* *m* *measure* *meeting* *mentioned* *mood* *name* *nameLink* *note* *num* *number* *occasion* *occupation* *opener* *orgDivn* *orgName* *orgTitle* *orgType* *orig* *orth* *otherForm* *p* *per* *persName* *phr* *placeName* *pos* *preparedness* *principal* *pron* *pubPlace* *publisher* *purpose* *q* *quote* *rdg* *re* *ref* *reg* *region* *rendition* *residence* *resp* *restore* *role* *roleDesc* *roleName* *rs* *s* *salute* *seg* *sense* *settlement* *sic* *signed* *soCalled* *socecStatus* *sound* *sp* *speaker* *sponsor* *stage* *street* *stress* *subc* *supplied* *surname* *syll* *symbol* *tagUsage* *tech* *term* *time* *timeRange* *title* *titlePart* *tns* *tr* *trailer* *trans* *u* *unclear* *usg* *view* *w* *wit* *witDetail* *witness* *writing* *xr* *xref*

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT seg %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST seg
  %a.global;
  %a.seg;
  subtype CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 14.3 *Blocks, Segments and Anchors*; 9.3 *Components of the Verse Line*; 10.2.4 *Speech Contents*

**<segmentation>** describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* editorialDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT segmentation %om.R0; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST segmentation
    %a.global;
    %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 5.3.3 *The Editorial Practices Declaration*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<sense>** (sense information group) groups together all information relating to one word sense in a dictionary **<entry>** (definitions, examples, translation equivalents, etc.)

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts)

**level** gives the nesting depth of this sense.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of digits

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct def del delSpan dictScrap distinct eg emph etym expan fLib foreign form formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss gramGrp handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr re ref reg respons restore rs s seg sense sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title trans unclear usg w xptr xr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree hom re sense trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT sense %om.RR; ( #PCDATA | sense | %m.dictionaryTopLevel; |
    %m.phrase; | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST sense
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;
    level CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12.2 *The Structure of Dictionary Entries*

**<series>** (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from biblPart

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* biblPart

*Data Description* May contain character data and certain phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA addSpan alt altGrp anchor biblScope cb certainty delSpan editor fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respStmnt respons span spanGrp timeline title

*May occur within* bibl biblStruct

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT series %om.R0; (#PCDATA | title | editor | respStmt | biblScope |
%m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST series
    %a.global;>
```

See further 6.10.2.1 *Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels*

**<seriesStmt>** (series statement) groups information about the *series*, if any, to which a publication belongs.

**Attributes** Global attributes only

### Example

```
<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian
    Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <idno type="vol">1.2</idno>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

**Module** Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**May contain** idno p respStmt title

**May occur within** biblFull fileDesc

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT seriesStmt %om.R0; ( (title+, (idno | respStmt)*)
| p+ )>
<!ATTLIST seriesStmt
    %a.global;>
```

See further 5.2.5 *The Series Statement*; 5.2 *The File Description*

**<set>** contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction).

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from dramafront

### Example

```
<set>
  <p>The action takes place on February 7th between the hours of noon
and six in the afternoon, close to the Trenartha Tin Plate Works,
on the borders of England and Wales, where a strike has been in
progress throughout the winter.</p>
</set>

<set><head>SCENE</head>
<p>A Sub-Post Office on a late autumn evening</p>
</set>

<front>
  <titlePage> ... </titlePage>
  <div type="Notice"> ... </div>
  <div type="Dedication"> ... </div>
  <div type="Performance"> ... </div>
  <set>
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>TIME</label><item>1907</item>
      <label>PLACE</label><item>East Coast village in England</item>
    </list>
  </set>
</front>
```

*Note* This element should not be used outside the front matter; for similar contextual descriptions within the body of the text, use the <stage> element.

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* dramafront

*Data Description* Contains paragraphs or phrase level tags.

*May contain* ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor bibl biblFull biblStruct camera caption castList cb certainty cit delSpan eTree entry entryFree event fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap graph head index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic l label lb lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 link linkGrp list listBibl milestone move note p pause pb q quote respons shift sound sp span spanGrp stage superEntry tech termEntry timeline tree u view vocal witDetail witList writing

*May occur within* back front

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT set %om.RR; ((%m.Incl;)*, head?, %component.seq;)>
<!ATTLIST set
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 10.1 *Front and Back Matter*

**<setting>** (setting) describes one particular setting in which a language interaction takes place.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**who** supplies the identifiers of the participants at this setting.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* must correspond with ID values of <person> or <personGrp> elements in the current document.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<setting who="p1">
  <name>New York City, US</name>
  <date>1989</date>
  <locale>on a park bench</locale>
  <activity>feeding birds</activity>
</setting>
```

*Note* If the who attribute is not supplied, the setting is assumed to be that of all participants in the language interaction.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* activity date locale name p time

*May occur within* settingDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT setting %om.RR; (p+ | (name | time | date | locale | activity)* )>
<!ATTLIST setting
    %a.global;
    who IDREFS #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.3 *The Setting Description*

**<settingDesc>** (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, either as a prose description or as a series of <setting> elements.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Example*

```
<settingDesc>
  <p>Texts recorded in the Canadian Parliament building
  in Ottawa, between April and November 1988
  </p>
</settingDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* declarable

*Data Description* May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements.

*May contain* p setting

*May occur within* profileDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT settingDesc %om.R0; (p+ | setting+)>
<!ATTLIST settingDesc
    %a.global;
    %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 23.2 Contextual Information; 5.4 The Profile Description

**<settlement>** contains the name of the smallest component of a place name expressed as a hierarchy of geo-political or administrative units as in “Rochester”, New York; “Glasgow”, Scotland.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from names, placePart, typed

*Example*

```
<placeName>
  <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement>
  <region>Scotland</region>
</placeName>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* placePart; names; typed

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xprr xref

*May occur within* placeName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT settlement %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST settlement
    %a.global;
    %a.names;
    %a.typed;>
```

*See further* 20.2 Place Names

**<shift>** (Shift) marks the point at which some paralinguistic feature of a series of utterances by any one speaker changes.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.spoken)

**who** supplies an identifier for the speaker or group of speakers whose shift in some feature is being noted. Its value is the identifier of a <participant> or <participant.grp> element in the TEI header.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a participant or participant group within the TEI Header

*Default* #IMPLIED

**feature** (feature) a paralinguistic feature.

*Datatype* (tempo | loud | pitch | tension | rhythm | voice)

*Legal values are:*

tempo speed of utterance.

loud loudness.

pitch pitch range.

tension tension or stress pattern.

rhythm rhythmic qualities.

voice voice quality.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**new** (new state) specifies the new state of the paralinguistic feature specified.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* An open list (for an example of possible values, see 11.3.2 *Synchronization and Overlap*)

*Default* normal

*Note* If no value is specified, it is assumed that the feature concerned ceases to be remarkable. The value “normal” has the same effect.

*Example*

```
<u who="LB"><shift feature="loud" new="f"/>Elizabeth</u>
<u who="EB">Yes</u>
<u who="LB"><shift feature="loud"/>Come and try this
<pause/><shift feature="loud" new="ff"/>come on</u>
```

The word “Elizabeth” is spoken loudly, the words “Yes” and “Come and try this” with normal volume, and the words “come on” very loudly.

*Module* Declared in file teispok2; Base tag set for Transcribed Speech: enabled by TEI.spoken

*Class* comp.spoken

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set u

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT shift %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST shift
  %a.global;
  who IDREF #IMPLIED
  feature (tempo | loud | pitch | tension | rhythm | voice) #REQUIRED
  new CDATA "normal">
```

*See further* 11.2.7 *Formal Definition*; 11.2.6 *Shifts*; 11.2 *Elements Unique to Spoken Texts*

**<sic>** contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**corr** (correction) gives a correction for the apparent error in the copy text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and  
 <sic corr="a' babbled">a Table</sic>  
 of green fields.

**resp** (responsibility) signifies the editor or transcriber responsible for suggesting the correction held as the value of the corr attribute.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text’s creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Example* for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and  
 <sic corr="a' babbled" resp="gifford">a Table</sic>  
 of green fields.

*Note* This attribute has no meaning if no corr attribute is supplied.

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the correction held as the value of the corr attribute.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* This attribute has no meaning if no `corr` attribute is supplied.

*Example* If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, no attributes are required:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now &mdash;  
how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

It is also possible to provide a correct reading and to identify the individual responsible for the correction:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now &mdash;  
how <sic corr="can we" resp="msm">we can</sic> prove or  
disprove anyone's theories?

*Note* The `<sic>` tag is a mirror of `<corr>`: the former leaves the original text untouched, giving the correction as an attribute value; the latter substitutes the correction, leaving the original reading as an attribute value. The choice between them is up to the encoder.

*Module* Declared in file `teicore2`; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* `edit`

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA `ab` `abbr` `add` `addSpan` `address` `alt` `altGrp` `anchor` `app` `bibl` `biblFull` `biblStruct` `c` `caesura` `camera` `caption` `castList` `cb` `certainty` `cit` `cl` `corr` `damage` `date` `dateRange` `dateStruct` `del` `delSpan` `distinct` `eTree` `emph` `expan` `fLib` `figure` `foreign` `formula` `fs` `fsLib` `fvLib` `fw` `gap` `geogName` `gloss` `graph` `handShift` `hi` `index` `interp` `interpGrp` `join` `joinGrp` `l` `label` `lang` `lb` `lg` `link` `linkGrp` `list` `listBibl` `m` `measure` `mentioned` `milestone` `move` `name` `note` `num` `oRef` `oVar` `orgName` `orig` `p` `pRef` `pVar` `pb` `persName` `phr` `placeName` `ptr` `q` `quote` `ref` `reg` `respons` `restore` `rs` `s` `seg` `sic` `soCalled` `sound` `sp` `space` `span` `spanGrp` `stage` `supplied` `table` `tech` `term` `text` `time` `timeRange` `timeStruct` `timeline` `title` `tree` `unclear` `view` `w` `witDetail` `witList` `xptr` `xref`

*May occur within* `ab` `abbr` `activity` `actor` `add` `addName` `addrLine` `admin` `affiliation` `author` `authority` `bibl` `biblScope` `birth` `bloc` `byline` `camera` `caption` `case` `castItem` `catDesc` `cell` `channel` `cl` `classCode` `closer` `colloc` `constitution` `corr` `country` `creation` `damage` `date` `dateRange` `def` `del` `derivation` `descrip` `dictScrap` `distance` `distinct` `distributor` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `domain` `edition` `editor` `education` `emph` `entryFree` `etym` `expan` `extent` `factuality` `figDesc` `firstLang` `foreName` `foreign` `form` `funder` `fw` `gen` `genName` `gloss` `gram` `gramGrp` `head` `headItem` `headLabel` `hi` `hyph` `imprimatur` `interaction` `item` `itype` `l` `label` `lang` `langKnown` `language` `lbl` `lem` `locale` `measure` `meeting` `mentioned` `mood` `name` `nameLink` `note` `num` `number` `occasion` `occupation` `opener` `orgDivn` `orgName` `orgTitle` `orgType` `orig` `orth` `otherForm` `p` `per` `persName` `phr` `placeName` `pos` `preparedness` `principal` `pron` `pubPlace` `publisher` `purpose` `q` `quote` `rdg` `re` `ref` `reg` `region` `rendition` `residence` `resp` `restore` `role` `roleDesc` `roleName` `rs` `s` `salute` `seg` `sense` `settlement` `sic` `signed` `soCalled` `socecStatus` `sound` `speaker` `sponsor` `stage` `street` `stress` `subc` `supplied` `surname` `syll` `symbol` `tagUsage` `tech` `term` `time` `timeRange` `title` `titlePart` `tns` `tr` `trailer` `trans` `u` `unclear` `usg` `view` `wit` `witDetail` `witness` `writing` `xr` `xref`

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT sic %om.RR; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST sic
  %a.global;
  corr CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.5.1 *Correction of Apparent Errors*

**<signed>** (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from `divbot`, `divtop`

*Example*

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

*Module* Declared in file `teistr2`; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* `divtop`; `divbot`

*May contain* #PCDATA `abbr` `add` `addSpan` `address` `alt` `altGrp` `anchor` `app` `c` `caesura` `cb` `certainty` `cl` `corr` `damage` `date` `dateRange` `dateStruct` `del` `delSpan` `distinct` `emph` `expan` `fLib` `foreign` `formula` `fs` `fsLib` `fvLib` `fw` `gap` `geogName` `gloss` `handShift` `hi` `index` `interp` `interpGrp` `join` `joinGrp` `lang` `lb` `link` `linkGrp` `m` `measure` `mentioned` `milestone` `name` `num` `oRef`

oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* back body castList closer div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue group lg opener performance prologue

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT signed %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST signed
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 7.2.4 Content of Textual Divisions; 7.2.2 Openers and Closers

**<soCalled>** (so called) contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from hqphrase

*Example*

To edge his way along the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what the knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT soCalled %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST soCalled
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.3.3 Quotation

**<socecStatus>** (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from demographic)

**scheme** identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a <taxonomy> element

*Default* #IMPLIED

**code** identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the source attribute.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a <category> element

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<socecStatus scheme="rg" code="ab1"/>
```

```
<socecStatus>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</socecStatus>
```

*Note* The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

*Module* Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

*Class* demographic

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* person personGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT socecStatus %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST socecStatus
    %a.global;
    scheme IDREF #IMPLIED
    code IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 23.2.2 *The Participants Description*

**<sound>** describes a sound effect or musical sequence specified within a screen play or radio script.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from stageDirection)

**type** categorizes the sound in some respect, e.g. as music, special effect, etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #IMPLIED

**discrete** indicates whether the sound overlaps the surrounding speeches or interrupts them.

*Datatype* ( y | n | u )

*Legal values are:*

y the sound is heard between the surrounding speeches

n the sound overlaps the surrounding speeches

u unknown or inapplicable

*Default* u

*Example*

```
<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>Now to business.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford and Zaphod</speaker>
  <p>To business.</p>
</sp>
<sound discrete="y">Glasses clink.</sound>
<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>I beg your pardon?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford</speaker>
  <p>I'm sorry, I thought you were
```

```

    proposing a toast.</p>
  </sp>

```

*Note* A specialized form of stage direction.

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* stageDirection

*Data Description* Contains character data and phrase level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT sound %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST sound
    %a.global;
    type CDATA #IMPLIED
    discrete ( y | n | u ) "u">

```

*See further* 10.3.1 *Technical Information*; 10.3 *Other Types of Performance Text*

**<sourceDesc>** supplies a bibliographic description of the copy text(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Example*

```

<sourceDesc>
  <p>No source: created in machine-readable form.</p>
</sourceDesc>

```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl p recordingStmt scriptStmt

*May occur within* biblFull fileDesc

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT sourceDesc %om.RR; (p | bibl | biblFull | biblStruct
    | listBibl | scriptStmt | recordingStmt )+ >
<!ATTLIST sourceDesc
    %a.global;
    %a.declarable;>

```

*See further* 5.2.7 *The Source Description*

**<sp>** (speech) An individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from chunk)

**who** identifies the speaker of the part by supplying an IDREF value.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* The values used are derived from the id attribute on the <role> elements in the cast list or from a list of the participants.

*Default* #IMPLIED

### Example

```
<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unrepresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him.
  In the first place...</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll &mdash; I could discourse to you on fish by the hour:
  but for the present I will forbear...</p>
</sp>
```

**Note** The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

**Module** Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** chunk

**Data Description** Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements.

**May contain** ab addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l lb lg link linkGrp milestone p pb respons seg span spanGrp speaker stage timeline

**May occur within** add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue item metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic stage view

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT sp %om.R0; ((%m.Incl;)*, (speaker, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
                      ((p | l | lg | ab | seg | stage), (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST sp
  %a.global;
  who IDREFS #IMPLIED>
```

**See further** 6.11.2 Core Tags for Drama; 6.11 Passages of Verse or Drama; 10.2.2 Speeches and Speakers

**<space>** indicates the location of a significant space in the copy text.

**Attributes** (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**dim** (dimension) indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical.

**Datatype** (horizontal | vertical)

**Legal values are:**

**horizontal** the space is horizontal.

**vertical** the space is vertical.

**Default** #IMPLIED

**Note** For irregular shapes in two dimensions, the value for this attribute should reflect the more important of the two dimensions. In conventional left-right scripts, a space with both vertical and horizontal components should be classed as 'vertical'.

**extent** indicates approximately how large the space is, in letters, minims, inches, or other appropriate unit.

**Datatype** CDATA

**Values** any measured quantity, e.g. '10 letters' or '4 lines'.

**Default** #IMPLIED

**resp** indicates the individual responsible for identifying and measuring the space.

**Datatype** CDATA

**Values** usually the initials of the responsible individual.

**Default** #IMPLIED

*Example*

By god if wömmen had writen storyes  
 As <space extent='7 minims' /> han within her oratoryes

*Note* This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like.

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr  
*Class* edit

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc  
 byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation  
 damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition  
 docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName  
 foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction  
 item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note  
 num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr  
 placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence  
 resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker  
 sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr  
 trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT space %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST space
  %a.global;
  dim (horizontal | vertical) #IMPLIED
  extent CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 18.2.5 Space

**<span>** (span) associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from interpret, metadata)

**value** identifies the specific phenomenon being annotated.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**from** specifies the beginning of the passage being annotated; if not accompanied by a **to** attribute, then specifies the entire passage.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of the element which occurs at the beginning of the passage.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**to** specifies the end of the passage being annotated.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* The identifier of the element which occurs at the end of the passage.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<span resp="TMA" type="structural unit" value="aftermath" from="p2" to="p4"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

*Class* interpret; metadata

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author  
 authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList  
 cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline  
 def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor

docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym  
 expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss  
 gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang  
 langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr  
 mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType  
 orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace  
 publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role  
 roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp spanGrp  
 speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time  
 timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing  
 xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT span %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST span
  %a.global;
  %a.interpret;
  value CDATA #REQUIRED
  from IDREF #REQUIRED
  to IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

See further 15.3 Spans and Interpretations

**<spanGrp>** (span group) collects together <span> tags.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from interpret, metadata

### Example

```
<spanGrp resp="TMA" type="collection of structural units">
  <span value="introduction" from="s1" to="s3"/>
  <span value="conflict" from="s4a"/>
  <span value="climax" from="s4b"/>
  <span value="revenge" from="s5" to="sx"/>
  <span value="reconciliation" from="nil1"/>
  <span value="aftermath" from="p2" to="p4"/>
</spanGrp>
```

*Module* Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

*Class* interpret; metadata

*Data Description* Any number of <span> elements.

*May contain* span

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author  
 authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList  
 cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline  
 def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor  
 docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym  
 expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss  
 gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang  
 langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr  
 mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType  
 orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace  
 publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role  
 roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker  
 sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange  
 timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT spanGrp %om.RR; ((span)*)>
<!ATTLIST spanGrp
  %a.global;
  %a.interpret;>
```

See further 15.3 *Spans and Interpretations*

**<speaker>** A specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<sp who="ni rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
```

*Note* The who attribute on the <sp> element may be used either in addition to this element or as an alternative.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* Any sequence of phrase level data

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* sp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT speaker %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST speaker
  %a.global;>
```

See further 6.11.2 *Core Tags for Drama*

**<sponsor>** specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

*Note* Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders*, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* titleStm

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT sponsor %om.R0; %phrase.seq; >
<!ATTLIST sponsor
  %a.global;>
```

See further 5.2.1 *The Title Statement*

**<stage>** (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from common, inter)

**type** indicates the kind of stage direction.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**setting** describes a setting.  
**entrance** describes an entrance.  
**exit** describes an exit.  
**business** describes stage business.  
**novelistic** is a narrative, motivating stage direction.  
**delivery** describes how a character speaks.  
**modifier** gives some detail about a character.  
**location** describes a location.  
**mixed** more than one of the above

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his
horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for
the family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* inter; common

*May contain* #PCDATA ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound sp stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT stage %om.RR; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST stage
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.11.2 Core Tags for Drama; 6.11 Passages of Verse or Drama; 10.2.3 Stage Directions

**<state>** specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the “milestone” method.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**ed** (edition) indicates which edition or version the milestone applies to.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string of characters; usually a siglum conventionally used for the edition.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If ed is not specified, then any milestone tag with an appropriate unit attribute will be selected.

**unit** indicates what kind of state is changing at this milestone.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**page** page breaks in the reference edition.

**column** column breaks.

**line** line breaks.

**book** any units termed book, liber, etc.

**poem** individual poems in a collection.

**canto** cantos or other major sections of a poem.

**stanza** stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

**act** acts within a play.

**scene** scenes within a play or act.

**section** sections of any kind.

**absent** passages not present in the reference edition.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**length** specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Should be a positive integer; if no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side.

When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly.

**delim** supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* If a single space is used it is interpreted as whitespace.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<state unit="book" delim=":"/>
<state unit="line" length="4"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May occur within* refsDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT state %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST state
  %a.global;
  ed CDATA #IMPLIED
  unit CDATA #REQUIRED
  length CDATA #IMPLIED
  delim CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 5.3.5.3 *Milestone Method*; 5.3.5 *The Reference System Declaration*

**<stdVals>** (Standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

*Example*

```
<stdVals>
  <p>Dates are represented in ISO order: YYYYMMDD.
</p>
  <p>All integer numbers are left-filled to 8 digits.</p>
</stdVals>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* declarable

*May contain* p

*May occur within* editorialDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT stdVals %om.RO; (p+)>
<!ATTLIST stdVals
    %a.global;
    %a.declarable;>
```

*See further* 5.3.3 *The Editorial Practices Declaration*; 23.3.2 *Declarable Elements*

**<step>** (step) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the “stepwise” method.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**refunit** (reference unit) names the unit (book, chapter, canto, verse, ...) identified by this step in a canonical reference.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters; typically a word or phrase in some natural language.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The provision of this attribute helps make the structure of the canonical reference much clearer. Its use is strongly recommended.

**length** specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Should be a positive integer; if no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side.

When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly.

**delim** supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* If a single space is used it is interpreted as whitespace

*Default* #IMPLIED

**from** specifies the starting point of the area referred to by this step in the canonical reference.

*Datatype* %extPtr;

*Values* a valid expression in the TEI extended pointer notation documented in section 14.2 *Extended Pointers*.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**to** specifies the ending point of the area referred to by this step in the canonical reference.

*Datatype* %extPtr;

*Values* a valid expression in the TEI extended pointer notation documented in section 14.2 *Extended Pointers*.

*Default* DITTO

*Example*

```
<step refunit="book" delim=":" from="CHILD (1 DIV1 N %1)"/>
```

*Note* With two differences, the extended pointer expressions given as values for the from and to attributes behave like those given for the corresponding attributes of an extended pointer element like <xptr>. First: unlike normal extended pointer expressions, those on a <step> element can

contain references to tokens in the canonical reference string itself, expressed as %1, %2, etc. Second: the initial location source for the first step is the root of the document, as for normal extended pointers. The initial location source for subsequent steps, however, is the result of the previous step, not the root.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May occur within* refsDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT step %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST step
  %a.global;
  refunit CDATA #IMPLIED
  length CDATA #IMPLIED
  delim CDATA #IMPLIED
  from %extPtr; #REQUIRED
  to %extPtr; "DITTO">
```

*See further* 5.3.5.3 *Milestone Method*; 5.3.5 *The Reference System Declaration*; 5.3.5.2 *Stepwise Method*

**<str>** (String value) provides a string value for a feature.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from singleVal)

**rel** indicates the relation of the given value to the actual value.

*Datatype* (eq|ne|sb|ns|lt|le|gt|ge)

*Legal values are:*

- eq indicates that the actual value is that given.
- ne indicates that the actual value is not that given.
- sb indicates that the value given is a substring of the actual value.
- ns indicates that the value given is not a substring of the actual value.
- lt indicates that the actual value is less than the given value.
- le indicates that the actual value is less than or equal to the given value.
- gt indicates that the actual value is greater than the given value.
- ge indicates that the actual value is greater than or equal to the given value.

*Default* eq

*Note* The use of rel=lt, etc. assumes that an ordering of string values has been defined.

*Example*

```
<str>Hello, world!</str>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* singleVal

*Data Description* Parsed character data.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT str %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST str
  %a.global;
  rel (eq|ne|sb|ns|lt|le|gt|ge) "eq">
```

*See further* 16.4 *Symbolic, Numeric, Measurement, Rate and String Values*

**<street>** (street) a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from addrPart

*Example*

```
<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>
```

<street><name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road</street>

*Note* The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* addrPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* address

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT street %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST street
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 6.4.2 Addresses

**<stress>** contains the stress pattern for a dictionary headword, if given separately.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaryParts

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT stress %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST stress
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 Information on Written and Spoken Forms

**<string>** contains the intended expansion for the entity documented by an <entDoc> element, enclosed by quotation marks.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<string>"the choice of quotes isn't always unimportant"</string>
```

System entities should include the *SYSTEM* keyword within the content of this element, as shown:

```
<string>SYSTEM 'teiclas2.ent'</string>
```

*Note* The content of this element is the *replacement text* for the named entity, including any keywords, and surrounded by appropriate quotation marks.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* any sequence of character data

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT string %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST string
    %a.global;>
```

See further 27.3 Entity Documentation

**<subc>** (subcategorization) contains subcategorization information (transitive/intransitive, countable/non-countable, etc.)

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, gramInfo

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; gramInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT subc %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST subc
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

See further 12.3.2 Grammatical Information

**<superEntry>** groups successive entries for a set of homographs.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from comp.dictionaries, dictionaryParts, entries

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* comp.dictionaries; entries; dictionaryParts

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* dictScrap entry form

*May occur within* argument body castList dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 eg entryFree epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT superEntry %om.R0; ((form?, entry+)| dictScrap)>
<!ATTLIST superEntry
  %a.global;
  %a.entries;>
```

See further 12.1 Dictionary Body and Overall Structure

**<supplied>** signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor in place of text which cannot be read, either because of physical damage or loss in the original or because it is illegible for any reason.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**reason** indicates why the text has had to be supplied.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any phrase describing the difficulty, e.g. ‘overbinding’, ‘faded ink’, ‘lost folio’, ‘omitted in original’.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** indicates the individual responsible for supplying the letter, word or passage contained within the <supplied> element.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text’s creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**hand** where the presumed loss of text leading to the supplying of text arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**agent** where the presumed loss of text leading to the supplying of text arises from an identifiable cause, signifies the causative agent.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any prose description of the agent.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**source** states the source of the supplied text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters identifying the source of the supplied text. This might be the sigil for a manuscript, or a particular edition, or the transcriber or editor's own initials, indicating it as their conjecture.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
I am dr Sr yr
<supplied reason="illegible" resp="RW" source="amanuensis copy">very humble Servt</supplied>
Sydney Smith
```

*Note* The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 18.2.4 *Use of the Gap, Del, Damage, Unclear and Supplied Tags in Combination* for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

*Module* Declared in file teitran2; Additional tag set for Physical Transcription: enabled by TEI.transcr  
*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT supplied %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST supplied
  %a.global;
  reason CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA %INHERITED;
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;
  agent CDATA #IMPLIED
  source CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 18.2.3 *Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text*

**<surname>** (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from personPart

*Example*

```
<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* personPart

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptra xref

*May occur within* persName

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT surname %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST surname
  %a.global;
  %a.personPart;>
```

See further 20.1 *Personal Names*

**<syll>** (syllabification) contains the syllabification of the headword.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, formInfo

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionaries

*Class* dictionaryParts; formInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptra xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree form trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT syll %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST syll
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

See further 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<sym>** (Symbolic value) provides symbolic values for features.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from singleVal)

**value** provides a symbolic value for a feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A string, e.g. *feminine*.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**rel** indicates the relation of the given value to the actual value.

*Datatype* (eq|ne)

*Legal values are:*

eq indicates that the actual value is that given.  
ne indicates that the actual value is not that given.

*Default* eq

*Example*

```
<sym value="feminine" rel="ne"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* singleVal

*Data Description* Empty tag.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT sym %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST sym
  %a.global;
  value CDATA #REQUIRED
  rel (eq|ne) "eq">
```

*See further* 16.4 Symbolic, Numeric, Measurement, Rate and String Values

**<symbol>** documents the intended significance of a particular character or character sequence within a metrical notation, either explicitly or in terms of other **<symbol>** elements in the same **<metNotation>**.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**value** specifies the character or character sequence being documented.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any available character or character sequence.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**terminal** specifies whether the symbol is defined in terms of other symbols (terminal="N") or in prose (terminal="Y").

*Datatype* ( Y | N )

*Legal values are:*

Y the element contains a prose definition of its meaning.

N the element contains a definition of its meaning given using symbols defined elsewhere in the same metNotation element.

*Default* Y

*Example*

```
<symbol value="x">a stressed syllable</symbol>
<symbol value="o">an unstressed syllable</symbol>
<symbol value="A" terminal="N">xoo</symbol>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xprt xref

*May occur within* metDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT symbol %om.RO; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST symbol
  %a.global;
  value CDATA #REQUIRED
  terminal ( Y | N ) "Y">
```

*See further* 5.3.8 The Metrical Declaration Element; 9.4 Rhyme and Metrical Analysis

**<table>** contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from *inter*)

**rows** indicates the number of rows in the table.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

**cols** indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

*Example*

```
<table rows="4" cols="4">
  <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data"/>
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
    <cell role="data">36</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">20</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">Wyndham</cell>
    <cell role="data">1</cell>
    <cell role="data">11</cell>
    <cell role="data">22</cell>
  </row>
  <!-- ... -->
</table>
```

*Note* Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

*Module* Declared in file *teifig2*; Additional tag set for figures, tables and formulae: enabled by *TEI.figures*

*Class* *inter*

*Data Description* Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.

*May contain* *addSpan* *alt* *altGrp* *anchor* *cb* *certainty* *delSpan* *fLib* *fsLib* *fvLib* *gap* *head* *index* *interp* *interpGrp* *join* *joinGrp* *lb* *link* *linkGrp* *milestone* *pb* *respons* *row* *span* *spanGrp* *timeline*

*May occur within* *ab* *add* *admin* *camera* *caption* *case* *cell* *colloc* *corr* *country* *damage* *def* *descrip* *dictScrap* *docEdition* *emph* *entryFree* *etym* *figDesc* *foreign* *form* *gen* *gram* *gramGrp* *head* *hi* *hyph* *imprimatur* *item* *itype* *l* *lang* *lbl* *lem* *meeting*

mood note number orth otherForm p per pos pron q quote rdg ref region rendition row seg sic sound stage stress subc  
supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT table %om.RR; ((head | %m.Incl;)*, (row, (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST table
    %a.global;
    rows CDATA #IMPLIED
    cols CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 22.1.1 *The TEI Table DTD*

**<tag>** contains text of a complete start- or end-tag, possibly including attribute specifications, but excluding the opening and closing markup delimiter characters.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from sgmlKeywords)

**TEI** indicates whether this tag is valid within the TEI scheme or not.

*Datatype* ( yes | no )

*Legal values are:*

yes this is a valid TEI tag.

no this is not a valid TEI tag.

*Default* yes

*Example*

Mark the start of each italicised phrase with a <tag>hi rend="it"</tag> tag, and its end with a <tag>/hi</tag> tag.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Class* sgmlKeywords

*Data Description* contains only characters legal between markup delimiter characters.

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tag %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST tag
    %a.global;
    TEI ( yes | no ) "yes">
```

See further 27 *Tag Set Documentation*

**<tagDoc>** documents the structure, content, and purpose of a single element type.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**usage** specifies the optionality of an attribute or element.

*Datatype* (req|mwa|rec|rwa|opt)

*Legal values are:*

req required

mwa mandatory when applicable

rec recommended

rwa recommended when applicable

opt optional

*Default* opt

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*May contain* attList attlDecl children classes dataDesc desc elemDecl equiv exemplum files gi parents part ptr remarks rs

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tagDoc %om.RR; (gi, rs?, desc, attList?, exemplum*, remarks?,
    part?, classes?, files?, dataDesc?, parents?, children?,
    elemDecl, attlDecl?, ptr*, equiv*)>
<!ATTLIST tagDoc
    %a.global;
    usage (req|mwa|rec|rwa|opt) "opt">
```

See further 27.1 *The TagDoc Documentation Element*; 27 *Tag Set Documentation*

**<tagsDecl>** (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to an SGML or XML document.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* rendition tagUsage

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tagsDecl %om.R0; (rendition*, tagUsage*) >
<!ATTLIST tagsDecl
    %a.global;>
```

See further 5.3.4 *The Tagging Declaration*; 5.3 *The Encoding Description*

**<tagUsage>** (tagUsage) supplies information about the usage of a specific element within a <text>.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**gi** the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* the name of an element from the current dtd

*Default* #REQUIRED

**occurs** specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* an integer number greater than zero

*Default* #IMPLIED

**ident** specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global id attribute.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* an integer number greater than zero

*Default* #IMPLIED

**render** specifies the identifier of a <rendition> element which defines how this element is to be rendered.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* an identifier specified as the value of the id attribute on some <rendition> element in the current document.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" ident="2" render="it">
Used only to mark English words italicised in the copy text
</tagUsage>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* tagsDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tagUsage %om.R0; %paraContent; >
<!ATTLIST tagUsage
    %a.global;
    gi CDATA #REQUIRED
```

occurs CDATA #IMPLIED  
ident CDATA #IMPLIED  
render IDREF #IMPLIED>

See further 5.3.4 The Tagging Declaration

**<taxonomy>** (taxonomy) defines a typology used to classify texts either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<taxonomy id="b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category id="b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category id="b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category id="b.a2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category id="b.a3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category id="b.a4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category id="b.a5">
      <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category id="b.a6">
      <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
    </category>
    <!-- ... -->
  </category>
  <category id="b.d">
    <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
    <category id="b.d1">
      <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category id="b.d2">
      <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <!-- ... -->
</taxonomy>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* bibl biblFull biblStruct category

*May occur within* classDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT taxonomy %om.RR; (category+ | ((bibl | biblStruct | biblFull),
                                         category*))>
<!ATTLIST taxonomy
  %a.global;>
```

See further 5.3.6 The Classification Declaration

**<tech>** (Technical stage direction) describes a special-purpose stage direction that is not meant for the actors.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from stageDirection)

**type** categorizes the technical stage direction.

*Datatype* ( light | sound | prop | block )

*Legal values are:*

light a lighting cue  
 sound a sound cue  
 prop a prop cue  
 block a blocking instruction

*Default* #IMPLIED

**perf** identifies the performance or performances to which this technical direction applies.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* The IDREFS are derived from the id attribute on a <performance> element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<tech type="light">Red spot on his face</tech>
```

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* stageDirection

*Data Description* Contains character level information.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tech %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST tech
  %a.global;
  type ( light | sound | prop | block ) #IMPLIED
  perf IDREFS #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 10.3.1 *Technical Information*

<TEI.2> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<TEI.2>
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
```

```
</text>
</TEI.2>
```

*Note* This element is required.

*Module* Declared in file `tei2`; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* Must contain one TEI header and one text.

*May contain* `teiHeader` text

*May occur within* `teiCorpus.2`

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT TEI.2 %om.R0; (teiHeader, text)>
<!ATTLIST TEI.2
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 3.6.1 *Structure of the TEI2.DTD File*; 23.1 *Varieties of Composite Text*

**<teiCorpus.2>** (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI.2 elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<teiCorpus.2>
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for corpus-level information -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI.2 id="T1">
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- text-level header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of second text -->
    </text>
  </TEI.2>
  <TEI.2 id="T2">
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- text-level header for second text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of second text -->
    </text>
  </TEI.2>
  <!-- further TEI.2 elements -->
</teiCorpus.2>
```

*Note* This element is mandatory when applicable.

*Module* Declared in file `tei2`; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of `<tei.2>` elements, one for each text.

*May contain* `TEI.2` `teiHeader`

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT teiCorpus.2 %om.R0; (teiHeader, TEI.2+)>
<!ATTLIST teiCorpus.2
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 3.6.1 *Structure of the TEI2.DTD File*; 23.1 *Varieties of Composite Text*

**<teifsd2>** (feature system declaration) contains a feature system declaration.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file `teifsd2`; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by `TEI.fs`

*Data Description* Must contain a standard TEI header, a set of feature declarations, and optionally a set of feature co-occurrence constraints.

*May contain* `fsDecl` `teiHeader`

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT teiFsd2 %om.RR; (teiHeader, fsDecl+)>
<!ATTLIST teiFsd2
    %a.global;>
```

See further 26 Feature System Declaration

**<teiHeader>** (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an “electronic title page” prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

**text** the header is attached to a single text.

**corpus** the header is attached to a corpus.

*Default* text

**creator** identifies the creator of the TEI Header.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* The name or initials of the person or institution responsible for creating this TEI header.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**status** indicates whether the header is new or has been substantially revised.

*Datatype* (new | update)

*Legal values are:*

**new** the header is a new header.

**update** the header is an update (has been revised).

*Default* new

**date.created** indicates when the first version of the header was created.

*Datatype* %ISO-date;

*Values* A date in ISO 8601 format, generally yyyy-mm-dd.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**date.updated** indicates when the current version of the header was created.

*Datatype* %ISO-date;

*Values* A date in ISO 8601 format, generally yyyy-mm-dd.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564&ndash;1616)</author>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
        <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
      </respStmt>
      <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
      <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name> </resp> </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
      <istributor>Oxford Text Archive</istributor>
      <address>
        <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine> </address>
      <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
      <availability>
        <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
      </availability>
      <date value="1968">1968</date>
```

```

    </publicationStm>
<sourceDesc> <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman
(The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl> </sourceDesc> </fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
<projectDesc>
  <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of
old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively
checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford
Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p> </projectDesc>
<editorialDecl>
  <correction>
    <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p> </correction>
  <normalization>
    <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except
that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.</p> </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
<refsDecl id="ASLREF">
  <step delim=" " from="CHILD (1 div1 n %1)"/>
  <step delim="." from="CHILD (1 div2 n %2)"/>
  <step from="DESCENDANT (1 lb n %3)"/>
</refsDecl> </encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item><date value="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item><date value="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
  </list> </revisionDesc> </teiHeader>

```

*Note* One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document; the header may also be exchanged as an independent document.

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

*May occur within* TEI.2 teiCorpus.2

#### *Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT teiHeader %om.RR; (fileDesc, encodingDesc*, profileDesc*,
revisionDesc?)>
<!ATTLIST teiHeader
  %a.global;
  type CDATA "text"
  creator CDATA #IMPLIED
  status (new | update) "new"
  date.created %ISO-date; #IMPLIED
  date.updated %ISO-date; #IMPLIED>

```

*See further* 5.1.1 *The TEI Header and Its Components*; 23.1 *Varieties of Composite Text*

**<term>** contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from hqphrase)

**type** classifies the term using some typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters; for serious terminological work, values should be taken from the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Default* #IMPLIED

#### *Example*

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

We may define <term id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term> as <gloss target="tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse

structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>

*Note* In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*Data Description* free prose

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype keywords l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term tig time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT term %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST term
  %a.globa1;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.3.4 *Terms, Glosses, and Cited Words*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*

**<termEntry>** (terminological entry (flat structure)) contains a single complete entry for one or more terms and their associated descriptive and administrative data.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.terminology)

**type** classifies the term entry using some typology, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters; for serious terminological work, values should be taken from the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Often but not always a term entry describes all terms in a term bank denoting a given concept. In the case of a term entry documenting a concept for which no standard term exists, the term entry will have to contain an empty ‘dummy’ <term>, of the form <term></term>.

*Module* Declared in file teite2f; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology

*Class* comp.terminology

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* addSpan admin alt altGrp anchor cb certainty date dateStruct delSpan descrip fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone note pb ptr ref respons span spanGrp tig timeline xptr xref

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT termEntry %om.R0;
( (%m.terminologyMisc; | otherForm | gram |
%m.terminologyInclusions; | %m.Incl;)*, (term,
(%m.terminologyMisc; | otherForm | gram | %m.terminologyInclusions; |
%m.Incl;)* )+ )
>
<!ATTLIST termEntry
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 13.3 Basic Structure of the Terminological Entry

**<termEntry>** (terminological entry (nested structure)) contains a single complete entry for one concept expressed in one language and comprising one or more terms and their associated descriptive and administrative data, or, in bilingual and multilingual terminology work, two or more very closely related concepts comprising one or more terms in each language and their associated descriptive and administrative data.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** classifies the term entry using some typology, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters; for serious terminological work, values should be taken from the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Often but not always a term entry describes all terms in a term bank denoting a given concept. In the case of a term entry documenting a concept for which no standard term exists, the term entry will have to contain a ‘dummy’ **<tig>**, which contains an empty term element of the form **<term></term>**.

*Module* Declared in file teite2n; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology

*Class* comp.terminology

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* addSpan admin alt altGrp anchor cb certainty date dateStruct delSpan descrip fLib fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone note pb ptr ref respons span spanGrp tig timeline xptr xref

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT termEntry %om.R0;
((%m.terminologyMisc; | %m.terminologyInclusions; | %m.Incl;)*,
(tig, (%m.Incl; | %m.terminologyInclusions;)*)+)
>
<!ATTLIST termEntry
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 13.4.1 DTD Fragment for Nested Style; 13.3 Basic Structure of the Terminological Entry

**<text>** contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from declaring, inter

### Example

```
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
```

```

    <body>
      <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
      <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
    </body>
  </text>

```

The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```

<text>
  <front>
    <!-- front matter for whole work -->
  </front>
  <group>

  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- front matter for first text -->
    </front>
    <body>
      <!-- body of first text -->
    </body>
    <back>
      <!-- back matter for first text -->
    </back>
  </text>

  <text>
    <!-- second text -->
  </text>

</group>
</text>

```

*Module* Declared in file *teistr2*; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* *inter*; declaring

*May contain* *addSpan alt altGrp anchor back body cb certainty delSpan fLib front fs fsLib fvLib gap group index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline*

*May occur within* TEI.2 *ab add admin camera caption case cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap docEdition emph entryFree etym figDesc figure foreign form gen gram gramGrp group head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting mood note number orth otherForm p per pos pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref*

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT text %om.RR; ((%m.Incl;)*, (front, (%m.Incl;)*)?,
    (body | group), (%m.Incl;)*, (back, (%m.Incl;)*)?)>
<!ATTLIST text
    %a.global;
    %a.declaring;>

```

See further [7 Default Text Structure](#); [13.4 Overall Structure of Terminological Documents](#); [23.1 Varieties of Composite Text](#)

**<textClass>** (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from *declarable*

*Example*

```

<textClass>
  <catRef target="TC1"/>
  <classCode scheme="DD12">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords>
    <list>
      <item>End of the world</item>
      <item>History - philosophy</item>
    </list>

```

```
</keywords>
</textClass>
```

**Module** Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

**Class** declarable

**May contain** catRef classCode keywords

**May occur within** profileDesc

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT textClass %om.RR; ((classCode | catRef | keywords)* )>
<!ATTLIST textClass
    %a.global;
    %a.declarable;>
```

See further 5.4.3 *The Text Classification*

**<textDesc>** (text description) provides a description of a text in terms of its *situational parameters*.

**Attributes** Global attributes and those inherited from declarable

**Example**

```
<textDesc id="t1" n="Informal domestic conversation">
  <channel mode="s"> </channel>
  <constitution type="single"> </constitution>
  <derivation type="original"> </derivation>
  <domain type="domestic"> </domain>
  <factuality type="mixed"> </factuality>
  <interaction type="complete" active="plural" passive="many"> </interaction>
  <preparedness type="spontaneous"> </preparedness>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"> </purpose>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
</textDesc>
```

**Module** Declared in file teicorp2; Additional tag set for language corpora: enabled by TEI.corpus

**Class** declarable

**May contain** channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness purpose

**May occur within** catDesc profileDesc

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT textDesc %om.R0; ( channel, constitution, derivation,
    domain, factuality, interaction,
    preparedness, purpose+ ) >
<!ATTLIST textDesc
    %a.global;
    %a.declarable;>
```

See further 23.2.1 *The Text Description*

**<then>** separates the condition from the default in an <if>, or the antecedent and the consequent in a <cond> element.

**Attributes** Global attributes only

**Note** This element is provided primarily to enhance the human readability of the feature-system declaration.

**Module** Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

**Data Description** Empty.

**May occur within** cond if

**Declaration**

```
<!ELEMENT then %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST then
    %a.global;>
```

See further 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<tig>** (term information group) within a <termEntry> element, contains information elements associated with a single term.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** classifies the <tig> using some typology, preferably the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters; for serious terminological work, values should be taken from the dictionary of data element types specified in ISO WD 12 620.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The <tig> element occurs only when the ‘nested’ form of the terminology base is used. In the case of a term entry documenting a concept for which no standard term exists, the term entry will have to contain a ‘dummy’ <tig>, which contains a empty term element of the form <term></term>.

*Module* Declared in file teite2n; Base tag sets for Terminological Data: enabled by TEI.terminology  
*Data Description* May contain a <term> element, followed by zero or more <descrip> elements describing the term, followed in turn by zero or more <otherForm> or <ofig> elements.

*May contain* addSpan admin alt altGrp anchor cb certainty date dateStruct delSpan descrip fLib fsLib fvLib gap gram index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone note ofig pb ptr ref respons span spanGrp term timeline xptr xref

*May occur within* termEntry

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tig %om.R0;
((%m.terminologyMisc;| %m.terminologyInclusions; | %m.Incl;)*,
(term, (gram | %m.terminologyInclusions; | %m.Incl;)*),
(%m.terminologyMisc;),
(%m.terminologyInclusions; | %m.Incl;)*)*,
(ofig, (%m.terminologyInclusions; | %m.Incl;)*)*
>
<!ATTLIST tig
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 13.4.1 DTD Fragment for Nested Style; 13.2 Tags for Terminological Data

**<time>** contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data)

**value** gives the value of the time in some standard form, usually hh:mm.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string representing a time in standard format; recommended forms are the extended formats from ISO 8601:2000 (hh:mm, hh:mmZ, hh:mm±hh)

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <time value="16:00">four o' clock</time>

*Note* If the normalized form of time is not given using an ISO 8601 format, this fact should be documented in the <stdVals> element in the TEI Header.

**type** indicates something about the type of temporal expression being tagged.

*Datatype* (am | pm | 24hour | descriptive)

*Legal values are:*

- am indicates a temporal expression made on the basis of a twelve-hour clock and referring to a time between midnight and noon.
- pm indicates a temporal expression made on the basis of a twelve-hour clock and referring to a time between noon and midnight.

**24hour** indicates a temporal expression made on the basis of a twenty-four-hour clock.

**descriptive** indicates a temporal expression made in descriptive terms, e.g. noon.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**zone** indicates time zone or place name wherever this is necessary to evaluate a temporal expression.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* contains a word or phrase such as ‘GMT’ or ‘Eastern Standard Time’ which might be helpful in evaluating the temporal expression.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

As he sat smiling, the quarter struck &mdash;  
<time value="11:45">the quarter to twelve</time>.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hypH impratur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense setting settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT time %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST time
  %a.global;
  value CDATA #IMPLIED
  type (am | pm | 24hour | descriptive) #IMPLIED
  zone CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.4 Dates and Times

**<timeline>** (timeline) provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from metadata)

**origin** designates the origin of the timeline, i.e. the time at which it begins.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must point to one of the <when> tags in its content.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* If the time of the origin is not known, it should be given an absolute value in descriptive terms, e.g. ‘sometime on the night of the murder’ or ‘unknown’.

**unit** specifies the unit of time corresponding to the interval value of the timeline or of its constituent points in time.

*Datatype* NMTOKEN

*Values* a semi-closed list of recognized time units such as ‘millisecond’, ‘second’, ‘minute’.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**interval** specifies the numeric portion of a time interval

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* -1 or any nonnegative number

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The value -1 indicates uncertainty about all the intervals in the timeline; 0 indicates that all the intervals are evenly spaced, but the size of the intervals is not known; positive values indicate evenly spaced values of the size specified. If individual points in time in the timeline are given different values for the interval attribute, those values locally override the value given in the timeline.

*Example*

```
<timeline id="t11" origin="w0" unit="centisecond">
  <when id="w0" absolute="sometime Monday morning before Christmas"/>
  <when id="w1" interval="-1" since="w0"/>
  <when id="w2" interval="10" since="w1"/>
  <when id="w3" interval="20" since="w2"/>
  <when id="w4" interval="15" since="w3"/>
  <when id="w5" interval="25" since="w4"/>
  <when id="w6" interval="10" since="w5"/>
</timeline>
```

*Module* Declared in file `teiling2.dtd`; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI linking

*Class* metadata

*Data Description* one or more points in time, one of which is its origin

*May contain* when

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine address admin affiliation analytic app argument author authority back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct birth bloc body byline camera caption case castGroup castItem castList cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct dateline def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle domain edition editor education emph entry entryFree epigraph epilogue etym expan extent factuality figDesc figure firstLang foreName foreign form front funder fw gen genName geogName gloss gram gramGrp graph group head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur imprint interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem lg lg1 lg2 lg3 lg4 lg5 list listBibl locale m measure meeting mentioned metDecl monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation offset ofig opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per performance persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal prologue pron pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher purpose q quote rdg rdgGrp re ref reg region rendition residence resp respStmnt restore role roleDesc roleName row rs s salute seg sense series set settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound sp speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol table tagUsage tech term termEntry text tig time timeRange timeStruct title titlePage titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witList witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT timeline %om.RR; (when)+>
<!ATTLIST timeline
  %a.global;
  origin IDREF #REQUIRED
  unit NMTOKEN #IMPLIED
  interval CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 14.5.2 *Placing Synchronous Events in Time*

**<timeRange>** (time range) contains two times or another phrase indicating a time period.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data)

**from** indicates the starting point of the time period in a standard form, usually hh:mm.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a string representing a time in standard format; recommended forms are the extended formats from ISO 8601.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If the format of the value is not one from ISO 8601, then its format should be declared in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header.

**to** indicates the ending point of the time period in standard form, usually hh:mm.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a string representing a time in standard format; recommended forms are the extended formats from ISO 8601.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If the format of the value is not one from ISO 8601, then its format should be declared in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header.

**exact** indicates the precision to be attached to either or both times specified.

*Datatype* (to|from|both|none)

*Legal values are:*

to the to time is exact

from the from time is exact

both both times are exact

none both times are approximate or unspecified

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <timeRange from="16:00" to="16:20" exact="from">  
Just after teatime</timeRange>

*Note* unless they conform to ISO 8601, time values should conform to the standard form declared in the <stdVals> element in the TEI header.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* data

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xpTr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT timeRange %om.RR; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST timeRange
  %a.global;
  from CDATA #IMPLIED
  to CDATA #IMPLIED
  exact (to|from|both|none) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.4 Dates and Times

**<timeStruct>** contains an internally structured representation for a time of day.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from data, temporalExpr)

**zone** indicates time zone or place name wherever this is necessary to evaluate a temporal expression.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* contains a word or phrase such as 'GMT' or 'Eastern Standard Time' defining a time zone.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<timeStruct value="16:15Z">
  <hour>four</hour>
  <minute>fifteen</minute>
</timeStruct>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* data; temporalExpr

*Data Description* May contain temporal components and character data only.

*May contain* #PCDATA addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty dateStruct day delSpan distance fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap hour index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone minute month occasion offset pb respons second span spanGrp timeStruct timeline week year

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange dateStruct def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange timeStruct title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT timeStruct %om.RR; (#PCDATA | %m.temporalExpr; | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST timeStruct
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;
  zone CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 6.4.4 Dates and Times

**<title>** contains the title of a work, whether article, book, journal, or series, including any alternative titles or subtitles.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from hqphrase)

**level** (bibliographic level (or class) of title) indicates whether this is the title of an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

*Datatype* (a | m | j | s | u)

*Legal values are:*

- a analytic title (article, poem, or other item published as part of a larger item)
- m monographic title (book, collection, or other item published as a distinct item, including single volumes of multi-volume works)
- j journal title
- s series title

u title of unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If the title appears directly enclosed within an <analytic> element, the level, if given, must be “a”; if it appears directly enclosed within a <monogr> element, level must be “m”, “j”, or “u”; when <title> is directly enclosed by <series>, level must be “s”.

**type** (type of title) classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

main main title

subordinate subtitle, title of part

parallel alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

abbreviated abbreviated form of title

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

#### *Example*

```
<title>La vie mode d'emploi. Romans.</title>
```

```
<title>Synthese: an international journal for epistemology, methodology  
and history of science</title>
```

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings  
of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18&ndash;21  
July 1989</title>
```

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>
```

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* hqphrase

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation analytic author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned monogr mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense series seriesStmt settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart titleStmt tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT title %om.R0; %paraContent;>  
<!ATTLIST title  
%a.global;
```

level (a | m | j | s | u) #IMPLIED  
 type CDATA #IMPLIED>

See further 6.10.2.2 *Authors, Titles, and Editors*; 5.2.1 *The Title Statement*; 5.2.5 *The Series Statement*

**<titlePage>** (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from front)

**type** classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Any string, e.g. ‘full’, ‘half’, ‘Series’, etc.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the ‘main’ title page of a work.

*Example*

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen
      of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name>
    for <name>T.P.</name>
    <date>1612.</date>
  </docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* front

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor byline cb certainty delSpan docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph fLib figure fs fsLib fvLib gap imprimatur index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline titlePart

*May occur within* back front

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT titlePage %om.R0; ((%m.Incl;)*, (%m.tpParts;),
  (%m.tpParts; | %m.Incl;)* ) >
<!ATTLIST titlePage
  %a.global;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

See further 7.5 *Title Pages*

**<titlePart>** (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from fmchunk, tpParts)

**type** specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Suggested values include:*

**main** main title of the work

**sub** subtitle of the work

**alt** alternative title of the work

desc descriptive paraphrase of the work included in title

*Default main*

*Example*

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
  AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
  Moll Flanders, & c.
</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
  And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
  Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
  Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
  once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
  Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
  at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
  <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifron2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* tpParts; fmchunk

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* docTitle front titlePage

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT titlePart %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST titlePart
  %a.global;
  type CDATA "main">
```

*See further* 7.5 Title Pages

**<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
  transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*May contain* author editor funder principal respStmt sponsor title

*May occur within* biblFull fileDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT titleStmt %om.R0; ((title+, (author | editor
| sponsor | funder | principal
| respStmt)*))>
<!ATTLIST titleStmt
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 5.2.1 The Title Statement; 5.2 The File Description

**<tns>** (tense) indicates the grammatical tense associated with a given inflected form in a dictionary.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, morphInfo

*Note* This element is synonymous with `<gram type=tense>`.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* morphInfo; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym form gramGrp trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tns %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST tns
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.1 *Information on Written and Spoken Forms*

**<tr>** (translation equivalent) contains a translation of the headword or an example.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts

*Note* This element is provided as a convenient means to distinguish translation equivalents from other methods of providing sense information, in the cases where such a distinction is desired. Where no such distinction is desired, translation equivalents may be tagged as `<def>` or `<gloss>` elements.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entryFree etym trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tr %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST tr
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.3.2 *Translation Equivalents*

**<trailer>** (trailer) contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from divbot

*Example*

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

*Module* Declared in file teistr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* divbot

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear w xptr xref

*May occur within* back body castGroup div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epilogue group lg listBibl performance prologue

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT trailer %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST trailer
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 7.2.4 Content of Textual Divisions; 7.2 Elements Common to All Divisions

**<trans>** (translation information) contains translation text and related information (within an entry in a multilingual dictionary).

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption case castList cb certainty cit cl colloc corr damage date dateRange dateStruct def del delSpan distinct eg emph etym expan fLib figure foreign form formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap gen geogName gloss gramGrp handShift hi hom hyph index interp interpGrp itype join joinGrp label lang lb lbl link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone mood move name note num number oRef oVar orgName orig orth pRef pVar pb per persName phr placeName pos pron ptr q quote re ref reg respons restore rs s seg sense sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage stress subc superEntry supplied syll table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tns tr trans unclear usg view w witDetail xpr xr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree etym hom re sense trans

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT trans %om.R0; ( #PCDATA | %m.phrase; | %m.inter; |
    %m.dictionaryParts; | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST trans
    %a.global;
    %a.dictionaries;>
```

*See further* 12.3.3.2 Translation Equivalents

**<tree>** encodes a tree, which is made up of a root, internal nodes, leaves, and arcs from root to leaves.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from chunk)

**label** gives a label for a tree.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**arity** gives the maximum number of children of the root and internal nodes of the tree.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A nonnegative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**ord** indicates whether or not the tree is ordered, or if it is partially ordered.

*Datatype* (Y | N | partial)

*Legal values are:*

Y indicates that all of the branching nodes of the tree are ordered.

partial indicates that some of the branching nodes of the tree are ordered and some are unordered.

N indicates that all of the branching nodes of the tree are unordered.

*Default* Y

**order** gives the order of the tree, i.e., the number of its nodes.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A nonnegative integer.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The size of a tree is always one less than its order, hence there is no need for both a size and order attribute.

*Example*

```
<tree n="ex2" arity="2" ord="partial" order="13">
  <root id="div1" label="/" children="plu1 exp1" ord="Y"/>
  <iNode id="plu1" label="+" children="exp2 exp3" parent="div1" ord="N"/>
  <iNode id="exp1" label="*" children="plu2 num2.3" parent="div1" ord="Y"/>
  <iNode id="exp2" label="*" children="vara1 num2.1" parent="plu1" ord="Y"/>
  <iNode id="exp3" label="*" children="varb1 num2.2" parent="plu1" ord="Y"/>
  <iNode id="plu2" label="+" children="vara2 varb2" parent="exp1" ord="N"/>
  <leaf id="vara1" label="a" parent="exp2"/>
  <leaf id="num2.1" label="2" parent="exp2"/>
  <leaf id="varb1" label="b" parent="exp3"/>
  <leaf id="num2.2" label="2" parent="exp3"/>
  <leaf id="vara2" label="a" parent="plu2"/>
  <leaf id="varb2" label="b" parent="plu2"/>
  <leaf id="num2.3" label="2" parent="exp1"/>
</tree>
```

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Class* chunk

*Data Description* A root, and zero or more internal nodes and leaves, but if there is an internal node, there must also be at least one leaf.

*May contain* iNode leaf root

*May occur within* add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue forest item metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic stage view

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tree %om.RR; ((leaf | iNode)*, root, (leaf | iNode)*)>
<!ATTLIST tree
  %a.global;
  label CDATA #IMPLIED
  arity CDATA #IMPLIED
  ord (Y | N | partial) "Y"
  order CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.2 Trees

**<triangle>** (Underspecified embedding tree, so called because of its characteristic shape when drawn.) provides for an underspecified <eTree>, that is, an <eTree> with information left out.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**label** gives a label for an underspecified embedding tree.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* A character string.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**value** provides the value of a triangle, which is the identifier of a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* A valid identifier of a feature structure or other analytic element.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<triangle label="NP">
  <eLeaf label="the periscope"/>
</triangle>
```

*Module* Declared in file teinet2; Additional tag set for Graph Theory: enabled by TEI.nets

*Data Description* An optional label or feature structure followed by zero or more embedding trees, triangles, or embedding leafs.

*May contain* eLeaf eTree triangle

*May occur within* eTree forest triangle

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT triangle %om.RR; ((eTree | triangle | eLeaf)*)>
<!ATTLIST triangle
    %a.global;
    label CDATA #IMPLIED
    value IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 21.3 *Another Tree Notation*

**<tsd>** (tag set documentation) contains a set of elements documenting an SGML or XML tag set.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<tsd>
  <tagDoc> ... </tagDoc>
  <entDoc type="pe"> ... </entDoc>
  <tagDoc> ... </tagDoc>
</tsd>
```

*Note* This element is required.

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* Contains any mixture of <tagDoc>, <entDoc>, and <classDoc> elements.

*May contain* classDoc entDoc tagDoc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT tsd %om.RO; ((tagDoc | entDoc | classDoc)+)>
<!ATTLIST tsd
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 27 *Tag Set Documentation*

**<u>** (utterance) a stretch of speech usually preceded and followed by silence or by a change of speaker.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.spoken, declaring, timed)

**trans** (transition) indicates the nature of the transition between this utterance and the previous one.

*Datatype* (smooth | latching | overlap | pause)

*Legal values are:*

**smooth** this utterance begins without unusual pause or rapidity.

**latching** this utterance begins with a markedly shorter pause than normal.

**overlap** this utterance begins before the previous one has finished.

**pause** this utterance begins after a noticeable pause.

*Default* smooth

**who** supplies an identifier for the speaker or group of speakers. Its value is the identifier of a <participant> or <participantGrp> element in the TEI header.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* Must identify a participant or participant group within the TEI Header

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Example*

```
<u who="a">if did you set</u>
<u trans="latching" who="b">well Joe and I set it between us</u>
```

*Note* Although individual transcriptions may consistently use <u> elements for turns or other units, and although in most cases a <u> will be delimited by pause or change of speaker, <u> is not

required to represent a turn or any communicative event, nor to be bounded by pauses or change of speaker. At a minimum, a <u> is some phonetic production by a given speaker.

*Module* Declared in file teispok2; Base tag set for Transcribed Speech: enabled by TEI.spoken

*Class* timed; comp.spoken; declaring

*Data Description* prose and a mixture of speech elements

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app c caesura cb certainty cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph event expan fLib foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp kinesic lang lb link linkGrp m measure mentioned milestone name num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pause pb persName phr placeName ptr ref reg respons restore rs s seg shift sic soCalled space span spanGrp supplied term time timeRange timeStruct timeline title u unclear vocal w writing xptr xref

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set u

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT u %om.RR; (#PCDATA | %m.phrase; |
                    %m.comp.spoken; | %m.Incl;)* >
<!ATTLIST u
  %a.global;
  %a.timed;
  %a.declaring;
  trans (smooth | latching | overlap | pause) "smooth"
  who IDREFS %INHERITED;>
```

*See further* 11.2.7 *Formal Definition*; 11.2.1 *Utterances*; 11.2 *Elements Unique to Spoken Texts*

**<uncertain>** (Uncertain value) provides uncertainty value for a feature.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from singleVal

*Example*

```
<f name="gender"><uncertain/></f>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* singleVal

*Data Description* Empty element.

*May occur within* f fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT uncertain %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST uncertain
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 16.8 *Boolean, Default and Uncertain Values*

**<unclear>** contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from edit)

**reason** indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any phrase describing the difficulty, e.g. ‘faded’, ‘ambient noise’, ‘passing truck’, ‘ill formed’, ‘eccentric ductus’.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**resp** indicates the individual responsible for the transcription of the word, phrase, or passage contained with the <unclear> element.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* must be one of the identifiers declared in the document header, associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text’s creation, transcription, editing, or encoding (see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**cert** (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty ascribed to the transcription of the text contained within the <unclear> element.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Default* #IMPLIED

**hand** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 18.2.1 *Document Hands*).

*Default* %INHERITED;

**agent** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from an identifiable cause, signifies the causative agent.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any prose description of the agent.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 17 *Certainty and Responsibility*. The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 18.2.4 *Use of the Gap, Del, Damage, Unclear and Supplied Tags in Combination* for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

*Module* Declared in file teicore2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Class* edit

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT unclear %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST unclear
  %a.global;
  reason CDATA #IMPLIED
  resp CDATA %INHERITED;
  cert CDATA #IMPLIED
  hand IDREF %INHERITED;
  agent CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 18.2.3 *Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text*; 6.5.3 *Additions, Deletions, and Omissions*

**<usg>** (usage) contains usage information in a dictionary entry.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel, formInfo, gramInfo)

**type** classifies the usage information using any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

geo geographic area  
time temporal, historical era (archaic, old, etc.)  
dom domain  
reg register  
style style (figurative, literal, etc.)  
plev preference level (chiefly, usually, etc.)  
lang lang (language for foreign words, spellings pronunciations, etc.)  
gram grammatical usage  
syn synonym given to show use  
hyper hypernym given to show usage  
colloc collocation given to show usage  
comp typical complement  
obj typical object  
subj typical subject  
verb typical verb  
hint unclassifiable piece of information to guide sense choice

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; formInfo; gramInfo; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree etym form gramGrp hom re sense trans xr

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT usg %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST usg
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 12.3.5.2 Usage Information and Other Labels

**<val>** (value) contains a single attribute value.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from sgmlKeywords

*Example*

```
<val>unknown</val>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Class* sgmlKeywords

*May contain* #PCDATA

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT val %om.R0; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST val
  %a.global;>
```

See further *27 Tag Set Documentation; 27.1.1 The AttList Documentation Element*

**<valDesc>** (value description) specifies any semantic or syntactic constraint on the value that an attribute may take, additional to the information carried by the <datatype> element.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<valDesc>must point to another <gi>align</gi>
  element logically preceding this
  one.</valDesc>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*Data Description* contains any sequence of phrase level elements or pCDATA

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add address att cb corr date dateRange del distinct emph expan foreign gap gi gloss hi index lb measure mentioned milestone name num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled tag term time timeRange title unclear val

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT valDesc %om.R0; %phrase.seq;>
<!ATTLIST valDesc
  %a.global;>
```

See further *27.1.1 The AttList Documentation Element*

**<valList>** (value list) contains a list of value and description pairs for an attribute.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**type** specifies the extensibility of the list of attribute values specified.

*Datatype* (closed | semi | open)

*Legal values are:*

**closed** only the values specified are permitted.

**semi** all the values specified should be supported, but other values are legal and software should have appropriate fallback processing for them.

**open** the values specified are sample values only.

*Default* open

*Example*

```
<valList>
  <val>req</val><desc>required</desc>
  <val>mwa</val><desc>mandatory when applicable</desc>
  <val>rec</val><desc>recommended</desc>
  <val>rwa</val><desc>recommended when applicable</desc>
  <val>opt</val><desc>optional</desc>
</valList>
```

*Module* Declared in file teitsd2; Auxiliary DTD for Tag Set documentation

*May contain* desc val

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT valList %om.RR; ((val,desc)*)>
<!ATTLIST valList
  %a.global;
  type (closed | semi | open) "open">
```

See further *27.1.1 The AttList Documentation Element*

**<val t>** (Value alternation) provides alternative (disjunctive) values for a feature.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from complexVal)

**mutExcl** indicates whether values are mutually exclusive.

*Datatype* (Y|N)

*Legal values are:*

- Y indicates that the values are mutually exclusive.  
 N indicates that the values are not mutually exclusive.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<vAlt mutExc1="Y"><sym value="masculine"/><sym value="neuter"/></vAlt>
```

*Module* Declared in file teifs2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Class* complexVal

*Data Description* Two or more feature values.

*May contain* any dft fs minus msr nbr none null plus rate str sym uncertain vAlt

*May occur within* f fsLib fvLib vAlt

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT vAlt %om.RR; ((plus | minus | any | none | dft | uncertain | null |
    sym | nbr | msr | rate | str | vAlt | fs),
    (plus | minus | any | none | dft | uncertain | null |
    sym | nbr | msr | rate | str | vAlt | fs)+) >
<!ATTLIST vAlt
    %a.global;
    mutExc1 (Y|N) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 16.7 *Alternative Features and Feature Values*

**<variantEncoding>** declares the method used to encode text-critical variants.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**method** indicates which method is used to encode the apparatus of variants.

*Datatype* (location-referenced | double-end-point | parallel-segmentation)

*Legal values are:*

- location-referenced apparatus uses line numbers or other canonical reference scheme referenced in a base text.
- double-end-point apparatus indicates the precise locations of the beginning and ending of each lemma relative to a base text.
- parallel-segmentation alternate readings of a passage are given in parallel in the text; no notion of a base text is necessary.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* The value “parallel-segmentation” requires in-line encoding of the apparatus.

**location** indicates whether the apparatus appears within the running text or external to it.

*Datatype* (internal | external)

*Legal values are:*

- internal apparatus appears within the running text.
- external apparatus appears outside the base text.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* The value “external” is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.

*Example*

```
<variantEncoding method="location-referenced"
    location="external"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teihdr2; Core tag sets: enabled when any TEI base is enabled

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* encodingDesc

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT variantEncoding %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST variantEncoding
    %a.global;
    method (location-referenced | double-end-point |
    parallel-segmentation) #REQUIRED
    location (internal | external) #REQUIRED>
```

See further 19.1.1 *The Apparatus Entry*

**<vDefault>** (value default) declares the default value to be supplied when a feature structure does not contain an instance of <f> for this name; if unconditional, it is specified as one (or, depending on the value of the org attribute of the enclosing <fDecl>) more <fs> elements or primitive values; if conditional, it is specified as one or more <if> elements; if no default is specified, or no condition matches, the value <none> is assumed.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain a legal feature value, or a series of <if> elements.

*May contain* any dft fs if minus msr nbr none null plus rate str sym uncertain vAlt

*May occur within* fDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT vDefault %om.RR; ((%m.featureVal;)+ | if+)>
<!ATTLIST vDefault
    %a.global;>
```

See further 26 *Feature System Declaration*

**<%version;>** (version name) serves as the root element for a concurrent markup stream which will be used to mark page and line numbers of a reference edition of the text.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<!DOCTYPE TEI.2 SYSTEM "tei2.dtd" [
    <!ENTITY % TEI.XML      'IGNORE' ><!-- SGML -->
]>
<!DOCTYPE La    SYSTEM "teip2.dtd" [
    <!ENTITY % version "La">
]>
<(TEI.2)TEI.2><(La)La>
<(TEI.2)TEI.Header> ... </(TEI.2)TEI.Header>
<(TEI.2)text>
<(La)page n='1'>
    ...
<(La)page n='4'>
    ...
<(La)page n='5'>
    ...
</(TEI.2)text>
</(La)La>
</(TEI.2)TEI.2>
```

*Note* The version name should be short (one or two characters), as it must be prefixed to all page and line tags in the concurrent markup stream.

*Module* Declared in file teipl2; Auxiliary tag set for concurrent markup of pages and lines

*Data Description* May contain character data, <vol>, and <page> elements.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT %version; %om.RR; (#PCDATA | page | vol)*>
<!ATTLIST %version;
    %a.global;>
```

See further 6.9 *Reference Systems*

**<view>** describes the visual context of some part of a screen play in terms of what the spectator sees, generally independent of any dialogue.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from stageDirection

*Example*

```
<view>
```

```

    <name>Max</name> joins his daughter
    at the window. <hi>Rain</hi> sprays his
    face-- </view>
  <view>
    <camera>Max's POV</camera> He sees occasional
    windows open, and just across from his apartment
    house, a <hi>man</hi> opens the front door of
    a brownstone--</view>

  <div type="shot">
    <view>BBC World symbol</view>
    <sp who="mp">
      <speaker>Voice Over</speaker>
      <p>Monty Python's Flying Circus tonight comes to you live
      from the Grillomat Snack Bar, Paignton.</p>
    </sp>
  </div>
  <div type="shot">
    <view>Interior of a nasty snack bar. Customers around, preferably
    real people. Linkman sitting at one of the plastic tables.</view>
    <sp who="jc">
      <speaker>Linkman</speaker>
      <p>Hello to you live from the Grillomat Snack Bar.
      <!-- ... -->
    </p>
    </sp>
  </div>

```

*Note* A view is a particular form of stage direction.

*Module* Declared in file teidram2; Base tag set for performance texts: enabled by TEI.drama

*Class* stageDirection

*Data Description* text and crystals

*May contain* #PCDATA ab abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct eTree emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss graph handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp l label lang lb lg link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig p pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound sp space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title tree unclear view w witDetail witList xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT view %om.R0; %specialPara;>
<!ATTLIST view
  %a.global;>

```

*See further* 10.3.1 *Technical Information*; 10.3 *Other Types of Performance Text*

**<vocal1>** (Vocalized semi-lexical) any vocalized but not necessarily lexical phenomenon, for example voiced pauses, non-lexical backchannels, etc.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.spoken, timed)

**who** supplies an identifier for the vocalist(s). Its value is the identifier of a <participant> or <participant.grp> element in the TEI header.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a participant or participant group within the TEI Header

*Default* %INHERITED;

**iterated** (iterated) indicates whether or not the phenomenon is repeated.

*Datatype* ( y | n | u )

*Legal values are:*

y the phenomenon is repeated.  
n the phenomenon is atomic.  
u unknown or unmarked.

*Default* n

**desc** (description) supplies a conventional representation for the phenomenon.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a description or representation of the phenomenon chosen from a semi-closed list

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<vocal dur="12" desc="whistles"/>
```

*Module* Declared in file teispok2; Base tag set for Transcribed Speech: enabled by TEI.spoken

*Class* comp.spoken; timed

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set u

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT vocal %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST vocal
  %a.global;
  %a.timed;
  who IDREF %INHERITED;
  iterated ( y | n | u ) "n"
  desc CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 11.2.7 *Formal Definition*; 11.2.3 *Vocal, Kinesic, Event*; 11.2 *Elements Unique to Spoken Texts*

**<vol>** (volume) marks the individual volumes of a reference edition.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<(La)vol n="2"><!-- text of edition La, volume 2 -->
<(La)page n="32"> <!-- text of edition La, vol. 2, page 32 --></(La)page>
<(La)page n="33"> <!-- text of edition La, vol. 2, page 33 --></(La)page>
<(La)page n="34"> <!-- text of edition La, vol. 2, page 34 --></(La)page>
<(La)page n="35"> <!-- text of edition La, vol. 2, page 35 --></(La)page>
</(La)vol>
```

*Note* The <vol> may be used if the reference edition has more than one volume; otherwise it need not be used. Any data contained within a <vol> element but not within a <page> element is assumed not to appear in the edition from which the reference scheme derives.

*Module* Declared in file teipl2; Auxiliary tag set for concurrent markup of pages and lines

*Data Description* May contain character data and <page> elements.

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT vol %om.RR; (#PCDATA | page)*>
<!ATTLIST vol
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 31.6 *Concurrent Markup for Pages and Lines*

**<vRange>** (value range) defines the range of allowed values for a feature, in the form of an <fs>, <vAlt>, or primitive value; for the value of an <f> to be valid, it must be *subsumed* by the specified range; if the <f> contains multiple values (as sanctioned by the org attribute), then each value must be subsumed by the <vRange>.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Module* Declared in file teifsd2; Additional tag set for feature structures: enabled by TEI.fs

*Data Description* May contain any legal feature-value specification.

*May contain* any dft fs minus msr nbr none null plus rate str sym uncertain vAlt

*May occur within* fDecl

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT vRange %om.R0; (%m.featureVal;)>
<!ATTLIST vRange
    %a.global;>
```

*See further* 26 Feature System Declaration

**<w>** (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from seg)

**lemma** identifies the word's lemma (dictionary entry form).

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a string of characters representing the spelling of the word's dictionary entry form.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example*

```
<w type="verb" lemma="hit">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>
```

*Module* Declared in file teiana2; Additional tag set for simple analysis: enabled by TEI.analysis

*Class* seg

*Data Description* May contain character data and <seg>, <w>, <m> and <c> elements.

*May contain* #PCDATA addSpan alt altGrp anchor c cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp m milestone pb respons seg span spanGrp timeline w

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view w wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT w %om.RR; (#PCDATA | seg | w | m | c | %m.Incl;)*>
<!ATTLIST w
    %a.global;
    %a.seg;
    lemma CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 15.1 Linguistic Segment Categories

**<week>** (week) the week component of a structured date.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

### Example

```
<title>Le Vieux Cordelier:
Journal r&eacute;dig&eacute; par Camille Desmoulins</title>,
<dateStruct type="Revolutionary" value="1794-02-03">
  <day type="name">Quintidi</day>
  <month>Pluviose</month>
  <week>2e d&eacute;cade</week>,
  <year>1'an 2 de la R&eacute;publique Indivisible</year>
</dateStruct>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT week %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST week
  %a.global;
  %a.temporalExpr;>
```

*See further* 20.4 Dates and Time

**<when>** (when) indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same **<timeline>** tag, or absolutely.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**absolute** supplies an absolute value for the time.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Times may be given in standard form, as specified in the Encoding Declarations section of the header.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* Required for the element designated as the value of the origin attribute in the **<timeline>** tag.

**unit** specifies the unit of time corresponding to the interval value.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a semi-closed list of recognized time units such as ‘millisecond’, ‘second’, ‘minute’

*Default* %INHERITED;

**interval** specifies the numeric portion of a time interval

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* -1 or any positive number

*Default* %INHERITED;

*Note* The value -1 indicates uncertainty about the interval.

**since** identifies the reference point for determining the time of the current **<when>** element, which is obtained by adding the interval to the time of the reference point.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Should point to another **<when>** element in the same **<timeline>**.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* If this attribute is omitted, and the absolute attribute is not specified, then the reference point is understood to be the origin of the enclosing **<timeline>** tag.

### Example

```
<when id="w3" interval="20" since="w2"/>
```

*Note* On this element, the global id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

*Module* Declared in file teiink2.dtd; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Data Description* empty

*May occur within* timeline

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT when %om.RO; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST when
  %a.global;
  absolute CDATA #IMPLIED
  unit CDATA %INHERITED;
  interval CDATA %INHERITED;
  since IDREF #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 14.5.2 *Placing Synchronous Events in Time*

**<wit>** contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation.

*Attributes* Global attributes only

*Example*

```
<rdg wit="E1 Hg">Experience</rdg>
<wit>E1 Hg</wit>
```

*Note* This element duplicates the information present in the wit attribute of the reading; it may be used to record the exact form of the sigla given in the source edition, when that is of interest.

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Data Description* May contain anything that can appear within a paragraph.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* app rdgGrp

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT wit %om.RO; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST wit
  %a.global;>
```

*See further* 19.1.4 *Witness Information*

**<witDetail>** gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from notes)

**target** indicates the identifier for the reading, or readings, to which the witness detail refers.

*Datatype* IDREFS

*Values* the identifier of the reading or readings.

*Default* #REQUIRED

**resp** (responsibility) identifies the individual responsible for identifying the witness

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters, typically the initials of the individual involved, or a role identifier like 'editor' if not known by name.

*Default* #IMPLIED

**wit** indicates the sigil or sigla for the witnesses to which the detail refers.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* the identifier of the sigil or sigla.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* In local encoding schemes, the value of the wit attribute can be enforced as IDREFS, such that only witnesses referred to in a <witList> element may be the subject of a <witDetail>.

**type** describes the type of information given about the witness.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Values can be taken from any convenient typology of annotation suitable to the work in hand; e.g. letter form, ornament, ...

*Default* #IMPLIED

**place** indicates where the note appears in the source text.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* As for the <note> element.

*Default* apparatus

*Note* For pages with multiple apparatus, values such as *app1* and *app2* can be used.

The place attribute can be used to indicate to text formatting software where a note should be printed. If the locations indicated do not agree with those in the copy text, that fact should be indicated in the TEI header.

*Note* The <witDetail> element should be regarded as a specialized type of <note> element; it is synonymous with <note type='witness detail'>. It differs from the general purpose <note> in the omission of some attributes seldom applicable to notes within critical apparatus, and in the provision of the wit attribute, which permits an application to extract all annotation concerning a particular witness or witnesses from the apparatus.

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* notes

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab add admin argument body camera caption case castList cell colloc corr country damage def descrip dictScrap div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 docEdition emph entryFree epigraph epilogue etym figDesc foreign form gen gram gramGrp head hi hyph imprimatur item itype l lang lbl lem meeting metDecl mood note number orth otherForm p per performance pos prologue pron q quote rdg ref region rendition seg set sic sound stage stress subc supplied syll tagUsage tech title titlePart tns tr trans unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT witDetail %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST witDetail
  %a.global;
  target IDREFS #REQUIRED
  resp CDATA #IMPLIED
  wit CDATA #REQUIRED
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  place CDATA "apparatus">
```

*See further* 19.1 *The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses*

**<witEnd>** indicates the end, or suspension, of the text of a fragmentary witness.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from fragmentary

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* fragmentary

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* lem rdg

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT witEnd %om.R0; EMPTY>
```

```
<!ATTLIST witEnd
    %a.global;
    %a.fragmentary;>
```

See further 19.1.5 *Fragmentary Witnesses*

**<witList>** (witness list) contains a list of all the witnesses referred to in <wit> elements or wit attributes within the critical apparatus.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from chunk

*Note* The provision of a <witList> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus. Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. One may treat this with distinct <witList> elements for each different part. Alternatively, one may have a single <witList> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the <witStart> and <witEnd> elements described in section 19.1.5 *Fragmentary Witnesses*.

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* chunk

*Data Description* May contain a series of <witness> elements.

*May contain* addSpan alt altGrp anchor cb certainty delSpan fLib fs fsLib fvLib gap index interp interpGrp join joinGrp lb link linkGrp milestone pb respons span spanGrp timeline witness

*May occur within* add argument body castList corr div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue item metDecl note performance prologue q quote set sic stage view

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT witList %om.RO; ((%m.Incl;)*, (witness, (%m.Incl;)*)+)>
<!ATTLIST witList
    %a.global;>
```

See further 19.1 *The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses*

**<witness>** contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**sigil** indicates the sigil for one witness or for one group of witnesses to which readings are assigned in a critical apparatus.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* the identifier to be used for this witness or witness group in the wit attribute of readings in the apparatus.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Note* In local encoding schemes, the value of the id attribute can be used as the sigil, and the declared value of the wit attribute may be changed to IDREF, so as to ensure that only witnesses referred to in a <witness> element contained within a <witList> may occur in the value of any wit attribute on a reading element within an apparatus.

**included** indicates which other witnesses are included in a witness group.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* a blank-delimited list of sigla.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* <witness sigil="B"> </witness>  
 <witness sigil="k"> </witness>  
 <witness sigil="I"> </witness>  
 <witness sigil="C\*" included="B k I"></witness>

*Note* The included attribute applies only in the case of witness groups; if no value is given, the <witness> element is held to refer to a single witness rather than a group.

*Note* The content of the <witness> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* witList

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT witness %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST witness
  %a.global;
  sigil CDATA #REQUIRED
  included CDATA #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 19.1 *The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses*

**<witStart>** indicates the beginning, or resumption, of the text of a fragmentary witness.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from fragmentary

*Module* Declared in file teitc2; Additional tag set for Textual Criticism: enabled by TEI.textcrit

*Class* fragmentary

*Data Description* Empty.

*May occur within* lem rdg

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT witStart %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST witStart
  %a.global;
  %a.fragmentary;>
```

*See further* 19.1.5 *Fragmentary Witnesses*

**<writing>** (Writing) a passage of written text revealed to participants in the course of a spoken text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from comp.spoken)

**who** (who) supplies an identifier for the participant who reveals or creates the writing, if any. Its value is the identifier of a <participant> or <participant.grp> element in the TEI header.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must identify a participant or participant group within the TEI Header

*Default* %INHERITED;

**type** (Type) categorizes the kind of writing in some way, for example as a subtitle, notice-board etc.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* Open list

*Default* #IMPLIED

**script** (Script pointer) points to a bibliographic citation in the header giving a full description of the source or script of the writing.

*Datatype* IDREF

*Values* Must be a valid identifier for a <script.decl> element in the TEI header

*Default* #IMPLIED

**gradual** (gradual) indicates whether the writing is revealed all at once or gradually.

*Datatype* ( y | n | u )

*Legal values are:*

- y the writing is revealed gradually.
- n the writing is revealed all at once.
- u unknown or unmarked.

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Note* The <writing> element will usually be short and most simply transcribed as a character string; the content model also allows a sequence of paragraphs and paragraph-level elements, in case the writing has enough internal structure to warrant such markup. In either case the usual phrase-level tags for written text are available.

*Module* Declared in file teispok2; Base tag set for Transcribed Speech: enabled by TEI.spoken

*Class* comp.spoken

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* argument body castList div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 epigraph epilogue metDecl performance prologue set u

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT writing %om.RR; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST writing
  %a.global;
  who IDREF %INHERITED;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED
  script IDREF #IMPLIED
  gradual ( y | n | u ) #IMPLIED>
```

*See further* 11.2.7 *Formal Definition*; 11.2.4 *Writing*; 11.2 *Elements Unique to Spoken Texts*

**<writingSystemDeclaration>** declares the coded character set, transliteration scheme, or entity set used to transcribe a given writing system of a given language.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes)

**name** gives a formal name for the writing system declaration

*Datatype* CDATA

*Values* any string of characters

*Default* #REQUIRED

**date** gives the date on which the writing system declaration was last revised.

*Datatype* %ISO-date;

*Values* A date in valid ISO format.

*Default* #REQUIRED

*Example*

```
<writingSystemDeclaration id="ENG" lang="eng"
  name="//TEI P2: 1993/WSD Modern English//en"
  date="1993-05-25">
  <language>Modern English</language>
  <direction lines="TB" chars="LR"/>
  <base name="ANSI X3.4" authority="national"/>
  <exceptions></exceptions>
</writingSystemDeclaration>
```

*Module* Declared in file teiwsd2; Auxiliary tag set for Writing System Declarations

*Data Description* May contain only a prescribed series of sub-elements.

*May contain* characters direction language note script

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT writingSystemDeclaration %om.RR; (language, script,
direction*, characters, note*)>
<!ATTLIST writingSystemDeclaration
    %a.global;
    name CDATA #REQUIRED
    date %ISO-date; #REQUIRED>
```

See further 25.1 Overall Structure of Writing System Declaration

**<xptr>** (extended pointer) defines a pointer to another location in the current document or an external document.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from loc, terminologyInclusions, xPointer

*Module* Declared in file teiLink2.dtd; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Class* loc; xPointer; terminologyInclusions

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation altGrp author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype joinGrp l label lang langKnown language lbl lem linkGrp locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term termEntry tig time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

### Declaration

```
<!ELEMENT xptr %om.R0; EMPTY>
<!ATTLIST xptr
    %a.global;
    %a.xPointer;>
```

See further 14.2 Extended Pointers

**<xr>** (cross-reference phrase) contains a phrase, sentence, or icon referring the reader to some other location in this or another text.

*Attributes* (In addition to global attributes and those inherited from dictionaries, dictionaryParts, dictionaryTopLevel)

**type** indicates the type of cross reference, using any convenient typology.

*Datatype* CDATA

*Sample values include:*

syn cross reference for synonym information  
etym etymological information  
cf related or similar term  
illus illustration of an object

*Default* #IMPLIED

*Example* `<xr type="cf">Compare <ref>madrigal (sense 1)</ref>  
</xr>  
<xr type="illus">see the illus. at <ref>tool</ref>  
</xr>`

### Example

```
<entry>
  <form><orth>lavage</orth></form>
  <!-- ... -->
  <etym>[Fr. &lt; <mentioned>laver</mentioned>
```

```

    L. <mentioned>lavare</mentioned>,
    to wash; <xr>see <ref>lather</ref></xr>].
  </etym>
  <!-- ... -->
</entry>

<entry>
  <form><orth>lawful</orth></form>
  <!-- ... -->
  <xr type="syn">SYN. see <ref>legal</ref></xr>
</entry>

```

*Note* This element encloses both the actual indication of the location referred to, which may be tagged using the <ref> or <ptr> elements, and any accompanying material which gives more information about why the reader is being referred there.

*Module* Declared in file teidict2; Base tag set for dictionaries: enabled by TEI.dictionary

*Class* dictionaryTopLevel; dictionaryParts; dictionaries

*Data Description* May contain character data and phrase-level elements; usually contains a <ref> or a <ptr> element.

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb lbl link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear usg view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* dictScrap eg entry entryFree etym hom re sense trans

*Declaration*

```

<!ELEMENT xr %om.RO; ( #PCDATA | %m.phrase; | %m.inter; | usg
  | lbl | %m.Incl; )* >
<!ATTLIST xr
  %a.global;
  %a.dictionaries;
  type CDATA #IMPLIED>

```

*See further* 12.3.5.3 *Cross References to Other Entries*

**<xref>** (extended reference) defines a reference to another location in the current document, or an external document, using an extended pointer notation, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from loc, terminologyInclusions, xPointer

*Module* Declared in file teilink2.dtd; Additional tag set for Linking and Segmentation: enabled by TEI.linking

*Class* loc; xPointer; terminologyInclusions

*May contain* #PCDATA abbr add addSpan address alt altGrp anchor app bibl biblFull biblStruct c caesura camera caption castList cb certainty cit cl corr damage date dateRange dateStruct del delSpan distinct emph expan fLib figure foreign formula fs fsLib fvLib fw gap geogName gloss handShift hi index interp interpGrp join joinGrp label lang lb link linkGrp list listBibl m measure mentioned milestone move name note num oRef oVar orgName orig pRef pVar pb persName phr placeName ptr q quote ref reg respons restore rs s seg sic soCalled sound space span spanGrp stage supplied table tech term text time timeRange timeStruct timeline title unclear view w witDetail xptr xref

*May occur within* ab abbr activity actor add addName addrLine admin affiliation author authority bibl biblScope birth bloc byline camera caption case castItem catDesc cell channel cit cl classCode closer colloc constitution corr country creation damage date dateRange def del derivation descrip dictScrap distance distinct distributor docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint domain edition editor education emph entryFree etym expan extent factuality figDesc firstLang foreName foreign form funder fw gen genName gloss gram gramGrp head headItem headLabel hi hyph imprimatur interaction item itype l label lang langKnown language lbl lem locale measure meeting mentioned mood name nameLink note num number occasion occupation opener orgDivn orgName orgTitle orgType orig orth otherForm p per persName phr placeName pos preparedness principal pron pubPlace publisher purpose q quote rdg re ref reg region rendition residence

resp restore role roleDesc roleName rs s salute seg sense settlement sic signed soCalled socecStatus sound speaker sponsor stage street stress subc supplied surname syll symbol tagUsage tech term termEntry tig time timeRange title titlePart tns tr trailer trans u unclear usg view wit witDetail witness writing xr xref

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT xref %om.R0; %paraContent;>
<!ATTLIST xref
    %a.global;
    %a.xPointer;>
```

*See further* 14.2 *Extended Pointers*; 13.2 *Tags for Terminological Data*

**<year>** (year) the year component of a date.

*Attributes* Global attributes and those inherited from temporalExpr

*Example*

```
<dateStruct value="1993-05-14">
  <day type="name">Friday</day>,
  <day type="number">14</day>
  <month type="name">May</month>
  <year>1993</year></dateStruct>
```

*Module* Declared in file teind2; Additional tag set for Names and Dates: enabled by TEI.names.dates

*Class* temporalExpr

*May contain* #PCDATA

*May occur within* dateStruct timeStruct

*Declaration*

```
<!ELEMENT year %om.RR; (#PCDATA)>
<!ATTLIST year
    %a.global;
    %a.temporalExpr;>
```

*See further* 20.4 *Dates and Time*



# **VIII: Reference Material**

